

THE
Famous History
OF
MONTELION
Knight of the Oracle.

Son to the true Mirrour of Princes,
The Most Renowned

PERSICLES.
King of *ASSYRIA*

SHEWING

His Strange Birth, Unfortunate Love, perillous Adventures in
Arms: And how he came to the Knowledge of his *PARENTS*.

INTERLACED

With Variety of Pleasant and
DELIGHTFUL DISCOURSE.

Licensed, According to Order.

London, Printed by J. R. and W. W. for W. Thackeray, and T. Passenger, who are to be
Sold at their Shops; at the Angel in Duck-lane, near W. of St. Dunstons,
and at the Three Bibles, on London-Bridge. 1687.

THE
Famous History

OF
MONTIELION

Knights of the Order

Son to the late Prince of Princes
The Most Renowned

PERSILES



King of ASSYRIA

His Strange Birth, Uncommon Love, and
Arms: And how he came to the Kingdom of ASSYRIA.

With Variety of Pleasant and
DELIGHTFUL DISCOURSE

Printed, according to order.

LONDON, Printed by J. Knapton, at the New Theatre, in Pall Mall, and sold by
all the Booksellers in Great Britain, 1709.

TO THE
READERS
HEALTH.

Gentlemen,

YOur well tyred Favours have so far set me on Fire in my further proceedings, that I, that hitherto followed the endeavours of Pierce Plainness, seem now for your pleasure to become even a Bow-fellow Prodigal, spending the sum of my store to the uttermost, as long as it lasteth.

If you find any crackt Coyn in these my Liberal Expences, yet for Foord's sake afford them sterling, and winking at small faults, excuse me to be mistaken, and so amongst friends it may pass for Currants. I am not of the humour of the New Fangling Taylor, that for every New wrought Suit, frames a New Fashion; Nor of their presumptious Nature, that of themselves being Vixius, face out their attempts with Heroical Lyons-Looks: But I, always the same, rest ever forward to entreat, careful to request, and daily addic'd Devoutly to attend humility. Against biting Theon's Tooth, I remain always Patience-proof, and the rather, considering the singular sentence of One of the seven Sages: VIZ.

That even a Man of Understanding (if he be) praised, he is led thereby to a self-loved opinion of his own Laudable parts; or as self-willed, presuming on high Deserts, may seem an especial Argument of no small Folly: And so likewise for being Discommended, to remain even A-mort, with a sad and heavy chear, and drooping mind, sign-

ring

To the Reader.

ring his sad looks like the Anatomy of Death, is a plain proof of his scarcity of Counsel, want of Patience; (which Philosophers hold the Sovereignest Vertue that belongs to the qualified endowment of Mortality) and (which is worse.) Penury of reason; *Affectus tempore suos.* I purpose not this, gentle Reader, as if Stojically I regard your Judicious Censure, but rather Portray a Preludium, how indifferently I can endure the divers taunting Reports of the envious: As for your ever Regarded Judgments, I account it the Sanctuary wherein my tryed Scene may find Refuge; the chief Grief only whereby feeble Inventions ascendeth; the Coloss that supporteth my endeavours, Tea, I reckon it all my Being, all my Essence, and all my Good.

As therefore with a favourable smile, not long since, you entertained Parismus and Parismenos, my elder off-spring with so chearful an Aspect: now cast your looks on my Montelion; whose forwardness to win the same, you shall perceive nothing Inferiour to the promptness of the former: although by Birth and Course of Time the Younger. He cannot Acquaint you with the wonders of Chivalry, with Admirable Acts, and Doubtly Deeds, supported always with a Fairy Suffrage, as was Ullisses in his Ten Years Venture, by the aid of Pallas. Your well-wishing acceptance, and kind conceit of him, is all the Recompence I ask for my Travel: As I wish no more, so I trust you will no less grant this, and make my endeavours prosperous; deny that, and leave me so unfortunate as hopeles for ever of any good success, as you have been bountifull in giving the one, so my self will not be ungrateful for the other, that both in one, and in both, may not only augment your loving pleasures, which I heartily wish, but also enrich my lasting content, which I hope you as courteously will.

Your Well-wisher, Emanuel Ford.

THE
FAMOUS HISTORY
OF
MONTELIION

Knight of the Oracle.

CHAP. I.

How *Persicles* was Created King of *Assyria*, and Travelled into *Persia*, to the Marriage of his Sister *Piera*, to the Emperor's Son *Dyloratus*: How he is now enamoured of *Constance*, and returned into *Assyria*.

AN Ancient King named *Pius*, ruled the Land of *Assyria* in great Peace, as well Fortunate by the Love of his Subjects, and other outward blessings, as with two fair Children, a Son and a Daughter, that after his death, should succeed in his Empire: and by reason Age was now so much grown upon him, he found himself wearied and unable to exercise the care that belonged to the Government of so mighty a nation; also he beholding in his Son more then ordinary Gravity, and so forward a mind to Vertue, as that he might well commit a matter of such weight to his care: he determined to give himself to rest, (as well agreed with his Age) and therefore caused all the Peeres of the Land to be assembled. This done, and all set in Parliament, the Old King uttered his mind, which was

to establish his Son Persicles, in the Kingdom. The Peers having given knowledge of his Merits, gave their whole consents, and to Persicles was within few days Crowned King; Pias having effected this according to his mind, yet could not be at quiet; till he had appointed a match for his Daughter, besting her Estate: to further which good intent, it fortuned that Deloratus, Son and Heir to the Emperoz of Persia, hearing of Pieraes Beauty, came into the Countrey of Assyria and by long suit, at last obtained her good will, and her fathers consent, being assured to her in the Presence of most, or all his Peers: but because certain conditions were to be ratified by the King his Father, the Solemnities of the Marriage was deferred until that was performed; and from that time should not be long protracted: which Deloratus, with great earnestness, hastned. Persicles with the consent of his Father, accompanied his Sister Piera into Persia, attended by a number of Gallant Knights, as well to see the conditions ratified, and the Marriage performed, as also to do Deloratus Honour: After their departure, they within few days arrived in the Kingdom of Persia: where Persicles and Piera were most honourably entertained by the Old Emperoz Torsillus and the conditions ratified.

The Solemnization of the Marriage was deferred for certain days, for the Emperoz of Persia determined to have the same performed with great Pomp, whither he invited many of his Neighbouring Kings, as of Arabia, Natolia, and Thessalia; The Persian Knights made preparation to attend the Bride-groom in great Royalty. Persicles being in the Court, and hearing what Gallants was likely to be at the Wedding, prepared most Rich Donaments against that day, determining not to be the last in Display of his Valour at the List. The prestied day being come, the Kings of Arabia, Natolia, Thessalia, and many Princes of great Estate arrived with them, and the City was filled with such a number of Knights and Gallants, that there were scarce room therein to contain them. To recite every particular of their entertainments, wrestlings, riches, and what Gallant Ladies were with them, would be too tedious: but in brief, there was such Royal entertainment as bestritted such Personages; and such a multitude of rare shows, and fine devices, as might every way please the eye of a curious Beholder.

The

The Partridge being past, the Sumptuous Banquets ended, and the States set to behold the Tilt : The first that entred the List was a Persian Duke, named Osimus, gallantly mounted, and a Man goodly proportioned : After him followed the rest of the Persian Knights, who were all Challengers against all strangers that came to make Tryal of their Valour: Pert came the adverse patty, the foremost of which was Pericles, who appeared in richness according to the Dignity of his place, being King of so mighty a Country as Assyria; whose sight led the beholders to an admiration of his evident perfections : After him followed Nonlus, Prince of Natolia, and after him a number of most Gallant Knights so richly adorned, as would have persuaded a cowardly Miscreant to have become valiant; whose particular descriptions I omit.

As Pericles was chief of the adverse part, and Duke Osimus of the Persians, so they two began the encounter, breaking of their staves with exceeding great valour; but Osimus intending to win the chiefest Honour, so that he was esteemed the best Knight in Persia, had provided Staves of tough wood, which would not start with an easie encounter, one of which he took and ran the fourth time at Pericles; who unprovided for such an unexpected assault, was overturned, and his Steed tumbling, fell upon him; that with the fall, for a time, he remained without sense. The Emperour of Persia and the rest, being much afraid that he was slain, came running from the Scaffold to take him up, carrying him forth of the Lists to be unarmed; amongst the rest his Sister Piera used her utmost endeavour to recover him; with whom likewise was a gallant company of Ladies to assist her, but chiefly the Empress of Persia, and her youngest Daughter Constantia, as more regarding him by reason he was Brother to Piera, and most of all lamented his mishap.

Pericles finding himself somewhat recovered, at the first opening of his eyes, fixed them on Constantia, which by reason he was not fully revived, stood still fixed upon the first object, as it were with affectionate earnestness, which caused an exceeding blush to rise in her Cheeks.

But now seeing such a number about him, he was amazed and half ashamed of his soyl, said, I beseech you leave me to my self,

self, and see the rest of the Tournament, for I have no harm : with that he started upon his feet, and fetching a deep sigh, departed : they were all much glad at his safety, and so leaving him to be attended by two Knights, they departed to the Scabfolds, and again took their places to behold the rest of the Tournament.

Pericles was exceedingly vexed, that he had received such a disgrace, and in the presence of such an Honourable Assembly ; most of all, for that he understood Osimus's intent ; and presently buckling on one of his Knights Armour, mounting himself, entered the List again ; by which time the Tilt was almost ended, and the Persian Knight bare away the prize : But Pericles then unknown, stood ready at the Races end, for the next Encounter, against whom the Persian Knight ran, but so far to his disgrace, that he tumbled with his heels upwards ; with that every one began to wonder who it should be, and the people gave an exceeding shout : then another Persian met with him, whose Fortune was much like the former : for his Speed stumbling with the force of the Encounter, they both fell down. A Knight of Persia, who that day had won great Honour by his valour, seeing that, would needs be the next to meet him, thinking to revenge his Country-mens disgrace ; but at the first Race, they could not perform it, for they passed by without any other odds, but breaking their Staves most Gallantly, and running again, the Persians Fortune was so bad, that he was overthrown. By this time the day was ended, and the Judges ready to depart, but Osimus entreated that he might break one Staff with the Stranger, which they granted. Pericles well knew him, resolutely determining to give or take the foil : both of them met with such terrour, that the earth seemed to shake ; and Osimus notwithstanding his great strength, was by Pericles overthrown, to salve his Honour and requite his discourtesie ; with that the People gave such shouts, as made all the Palace to ring with the sound : When Pericles discovered himself, which made every one to rejoyce and wonder at his valour.

Pericles being unarmed, accompanied the Emperour of Persia, the King of Natolia, and the rest ; having that day won such Honour, as made him more highly esteemed ; and coming to salute

salute his Sister Piera, he suddenly espied Constantia, thinking he had before seen that sweet countenance, but he could not remember where, which cast him into such a deep study, that he almost forgot himself. After he had saluted the rest, he came to Constantia, to whom he said, Fair Lady, either I have beheld your Beauty and that sweet Countenance in some other Country, or in some Vision, for my mind perswadeth me, that I should perfectly know you; for I am sure, this is not the first time I have seen you, which makes me thus bold, to demand of whence you are, if it be not offensive unto you; Sir (replied Constantia) it may be I am but an imperfect shadow of her you so perfectly remember, for until this day, I never saw you: which maketh me suppose you do but take occasion of course to commend me, that deserve no such matter: neither shall it offend me, nor I deny to shew my Birth, being Daughter to the Emperor of Persia, but for many years brought up in Arabia. Pardon my boldness (quoth Pericles) for I would not offend you; neither do I think you a shadow, but a perfect substance, and not to resemble any but your self; for there can be no beauty that excels yours, which mine eyes before this time have beheld: or else nature it self hath imprinted in my Heart, an essential instinct of Devotion thereto, which perswades me to this boldness; therefore I humbly desire you not to misconceive me, nor esteem me of so rude a disposition, as to speak otherwise than my Heart thinks, and to account of me as one that earnestly desires to be better acquainted with you, and will endeavour to make amends for my offence given, offering my self, and all that is mine to be at your disposition, which said, he left off further speech, for he saw others attend to hear what he said.

At night Constantia being in her private Chamber, called to remembrance Pericles speeches, marveling why he should say that he had seen her before, which she knew could not be; but remembering how earnestly he beheld her that day, when he was scarce received from his trance, she thought that might breed such a persuasion in him, which was so indeed; withal, she called to mind his Comeliness, Valour, Estate and Courtliness, which she had before noted: all which remembrances, made her so much forget all other thoughts, that a great part of the night was overpass

verpast; and after she had revived her senses, she felt such an alteration, that all the night she could not rest, delighting in nothing more than to remember him. The like did Persicles, for her beauty and other outward graces had so pierced his Heart, that he was enthralled to her love, and so resolved to win it.

Early the next Morning he got up, seeking all occasions to speak with her again, but was disappointed all the Forenoon, for she by reason of her little rest in the night, kept her Chamber, and after Dinner, accompanied the Queen her Mother, and other Ladies, whereby he was that day disappointed: The next morning likewise he arose, studying how to come to her speech; for his affection was so great, as no thought contented him so well as her remembrance: but before he could bring to pass what he most desired, there arrived Messengers from Assyria, certifying him that his Father was dead, and that their antient enemy the King of Armenia had entered the Land, and destroyed many of his Subjects, desiring him in all haste to return, for in his absence, the Assyrians seemed like mad men without courage.

Persicles hearing this unexpected news, was exceedingly astonished, both with desire to save his Country, and also to prosecute his love, the one persuading him to stay, the other hasten his departure; the one being as dear to him as his Life, the other as dear as Life, Country and all; for without obtaining of that, he thought he could not live, being so much perplexed, that he could not resolve what to do. At last the special regard of his Country overcame his heart, and revived him with a manly courage to revenge, so that he commanded all things to be prepared for his sudden departure: and going to his Chamber, he got Pen and Ink, and writ as followeth.

To the most Fair *Constantia*.

MOST Beloved *Constantia*, though my Countries preservation occasioneth my sudden departure, yet my Love to your Perfection, importuneth me to sollicite your gentle Ears with these rude Lines: I cannot with any colourable Phrases shadow a perfect meaning, nor with painted Eloquence decipher my true Love; but in the truest sort manifest my constant

stant affection to your Vertues, which unless your Grace with some favour, will be my endless torments; I have long desired to make the same manifest unto you, but I was disappointed, and my unexpected departure hath now shut me from his presence, whereby I shall live in continual care: Notwithstanding I humbly beseech you in my unwilling absence, to esteem me your faithful and true devoted Servant, and one that hath vowed himself ever to be yours, whose welfare consisteth in your courtship, the hope whereof shall preserve my Life until my return, which my constant Love will cause me to hasten; desiring you, though I be absent, not to forget me, nor for my little deserts to reject me, but let me be so much bound to your virtues, as to conceive well of me; so shall my joys be lengthened, my unhappy life preserved, and my good will and constant Loyalty highly rewarded: So with sorrow I take my leave,

Yours inseparably, Pericles.

Having writ this Letter, he found out his Sister Piers; to whom he said, Dear Sister, the sorrows that cause my departure come so suddenly, as that I cannot stand long to confer with you, therefore that I build upon the assurance of your love, secrecy and assistance, I will unfold to you the secrets of my Heart, and that which none but your self shall know. So it is, that Constantia's beauty hath enamoured my eyes, and I remain so much enthralled thereto, that unless she pity me, I am but cast away: I desire your assistance therein, whereby you may preserve my life. I have writ this Letter unto her, which I desire you to deliver, and withal to use such speeches in my behalf, as shall seem best in your wisdom; for I assure you, unless at my return, which shall be shortly, I find her favourable, my sorrows will shorten my days; then good Sister shew your love to me in this. Piers promised her utmost assistance, and so with many tears on each side, they parted.

The news of his departure was soon spread through the whole Court, and came to Constantia's hearing, who left her Chamber, thinking to have a sight of him, which some sparks of love being kindled in her tender breast, provoked her unto. After all farewells

wells were past, he espied her in Company with other Ladies, to whom he came, and among the rest of them all, only took his leave of her with a sweet kiss, bethinking forth a bitter sigh at the parting, which every one noted; some taking the same in disdain, and others marvelling that he regarded her above them all, which made the blood rise in Constantia's Cheeks, and the water swell in her Eyes.

CHAP. II.

How *Helion* Prince of *Arabia*, crost the love between *Persicles* and *Constantia*: Of a battel fought between *Persicles* and the King of *Armenia*, and how he discovered himself to *Constantia*.

HIS departure caused a sadness throughout the Court, for indeed he was the beauty thereof, so excellent was his person, and so commendable his qualities. *Piera* betaking her self to her Chamber, lamented his absence with private tears, until *Deloratus* found her out, and caused her with comfortable speeches to give over that grief. The King of *Narolia* likewise with most of his Nobles and Knights that came to the solemnization of the Wedding, were departed, except Prince *Helion* Son to the King of *Arabia*, the occasion of whose stay, was to crave *Constantia* in Marriage, assuring himself of her Love, by reason of the familiarity that had been betwixt them in his Father's Court: which indeed by her former kindness he might be in some assurance of, though not by any promise she had made him; which motion he made to the Emperor of *Persia*, who esteeming so Honourably of him, regarding his Birth, and most of all desiring to be allied to the Arabian King, gave his consent; which was fully concluded and agreed upon, before it came to *Constantia's* knowledge.

Prince *Helion* having this assurance, with a merry Heart sought out *Constantia*, intending to reveal the same to her, and according to his wonted kind of familiarity began to greet her.

in whom he found such an alteration, that he wondered thereat ; saying, My dear Constantia, this unexpected unkindness in you, whom I esteem as my most chosen friend, maketh me admire, whereas I had thought to have enjoyed your love without interruption : Upon confidence of your courtesie, I have moved your Fathers consent to our Marriage, who hath yielded thereto, then I beseech you, darken not both yours and my joys with these misty clouds of care, which will fill my heart with sorrow ; but rather encrease your kindness both to mine and your comfort.

Constantia's countenance betwaxed the angry motions of her heart, caused by his speeches, that she had much ado to refrain from shedding tears ; yet with a colour as red as Scarlet, she gave him this answer : Prince Helion, if that be true which you tell me, I cannot chuse but wonder at your folly, that would without assurance of my love, make such a motion. Think you my affections are to be limited according to your disposition : for my part, I disclaim such interest, and renounce such affections, for I never intend any such matter, nor ever did you demand the same ; then my Lord, be you satisfied with this, for I never did, nor will give my consent.

Helion hearing this answer, was nipt on the head, being struck with such grief, that he could not tell what to say ; but at last replied : Constantia, I confess I have done you wrong in adventuring so far without your consent, but yet, for that I have not thereby dishonoured your name, or otherwise injured you, I humbly crave pardon, desiring you to ratifie that which I have by your former courtesie, assured my self of, and let not my over boldness alienate any part of your good will ; for you know that my affections have remained inviolably constant many years, and I have attended your liking with such fervency, as you may be resolutely assured of my truth. When I beseech you, be not displeased with me, but according to your wonted kindness, accept me in your favour. My Lord (replied she) I cannot deny but that your good will hath exceeded my deserts, for which I thank you ; and withal, that I have always esteemed you, which likewise I would have done still, but now that opinion is altered ; neither can I be induced to conceive well of him that would do me such
manifest

manifest injury as you have done; therefore I pray be contented with that favour you have had, for my affectiōs are otherwise imployed, and my heart utterly disagreeing to the motion you have made; with that she espied Piera in the Garden coming towards her, to whom she went down, saluting her most kindly; Piera thought now to have delivered her Brothers Letter, but by reason there was divers in the company, she could not then perform it; after a while they left each other: Piera returning to her Chamber, and Constantia to a secret place in the Garden, where she uttered these meditations. What contrarious disquiets are these that possess the Center of my heart? What inconveniences am I like to run into? How shall I avoid blame for the one, and reap content by the other; How unkindly hath Prince Helion used me: to make this mention to my Father, whose disposition must not be crost without hazard of much disquiet? My kindness to whom hath caused this over-sord conceit of himself, and brought me into much trouble: I could have loved him before I came to the sight of Persicles, whose gifts are so far exceeding his, that whereas my heart loved him, the thought of that love is now most grievous; wherein I may do my self great wrong; for in hope of his affection, I refuse Helions love, which may depriue me of both, purchase my Fathers heavy displeasure, and my own perpetual discontent. Revoluing a Chaos of these and such like confused cogitations, which overcame her senses with their ambiguity; with a heavy and discontented vein she went to her Chamber, thinking there to consider of every particular at full; where she found Piera all alone staying her coming in, who soon espied that Constantia had wept, whereupon she took occasion to say as followeth. My beloved Sister, I am sorry to see you in this heavy and sad vein, always finding you either sad or weeping; which maketh me wonder, and desire to know the cause, as one willing in any sort to counsel you, and comfort you with my uttermost assistance: I have of purpose entered your chamber to have some conference in private with you, being a Messenger sent to you by my Brother Persicles; who I know loveth you dearly; who by me humbly commendeth himself unto you, being sorry that his sudden departure was such, that he could not before his going, do you that service you deserve,

serve, withal desired me to deliver you this Letter. Constantia without making reply received the Letter, and read the same; which when she had done, she said, Dear Sister, I thank you for taking this pains to come to me, and not rather to have sent for me, that rest at your command: And also, I thank that worthy King Persicles, that he will vouchsafe me that undeserved favour, as to esteem well of my unworthyness, to whom I am bound in all honourable respects, but how unfit am I to entertain love, your self would judge, if you knew mine estate; which upon assurance of your secrecie I will unfold. Prince Helion vainly presuming he was assured of my favour, hath asked my Fathers consent to a Marriage betwixt him and me, which he hath granted unto: But the Heavens can testifie, it is disagreeing to my heart, and altogether without my consent, which he shall never attain, what danger soever I incur thereby, which if Persicles did understand, would soon alter his mind; therefore it is best for his quiet, not to place his affections on me so unworthy, but let me alone to endure the affliction that is like to ensue.

I know (quoth Piera) that my Brothers love is so constant, that nothing can alter the same, which he related to me at large: which makes me testifie the assurance thereof, which would you but accept of, or give me some comfortable hopes in his absence, I should think my self bound to you for ever, and to have done him a great pleasure; for nothing but the happy tydings of your favour can comfort him. The Emperour will not compel you to marry Helion, when he understandeth that you are otherwise bent, for that were cruelty; and I think Helion himself beareth not so dishonourable a mind, as to seek your love by constraint, for that were inhumanity: But would you yield to like of my Brothers love, who is every way as good as the Prince of Arabia, the knowledge thereof would soon make him return to ask your Fathers consent, which may peradventure stand as well affected to him, as to Prince Helion. Ah me! (said Constantia) Sister, I had not doubt to reveal my secrets to you, that I know, for Persicles sake will conceal them. I confess without further circumstances, that I love that noble King Persicles, which is the cause of this disquiet, nor did my fancy ever yield the least conceit of liking Helions love, which I took to be rather

grounded vpon common Familiarity than pretence of Marriage: therefore now that you are assured of that which you request, I beseech you not to conceiue amiss of my rash confession, nor esteem my love light because of so short continuance, for it is immovable; but rather comfort my poor disquieted heart with your counsel how to avoid these inconveniences; and if that worthy Knight be so affected towards me, as your speeches and this Letter affirm, I would wish his return might be speedy, otherwise my sorrows will be endless; for I know my Fathers nature to be such, that whatsoever he will have, must be performed, though equity would perswade the contrary. Grieve not so much (quoth Piera) with premeditated conceit of fear, which peradventure will never come to pass. I will presently send Letters to my Brother, who shall carry such news as will comfort his Heart, and cause his speedy return: In the mean time I will make Deloratus acquainted with Helions practice, nor Persicles's love, who shall perswade all that may be, not to consent to marry you against your will. Be then of good comfort, and in assurance of Persicles's loyalty, let no fear disquiet your senses, or impair your health, for things now at the worst, may have a good end: These speeches ended, they departed.

All this while Helion was meditating how to hasten the marriage; but most of all to find the cause of Constantia's discontent, which he thought was aggravated against him, by some good conceit which she had lately entertained of some other than himself, which made him prosecute the same with more serbency, dealing so effectually with the Emperoz, that he swore Constantia should be ruled by him, and thereupon the next day sent for her, to whom he said: Daughter, I think it is not unknown to you, that I have promised you in Marriage to Prince Helion, one that is every way worthy to match with you, both for nobleness of birth, vertuous qualities, and comeliness of person: withal, I am given to understand, that you like not my choice, nor esteem my command, which if you neglect, you shall not only displease me, but lose my service for ever; for as you are mine, I purpose to dispose of you, but if you refuse my counsel, refuse me too, for I will not regard a disobedient Child: The manifold reasons I could alledge, that perswade me to the confirmation of this contract,

tract, are of such weight, as I might seem careless of your welfare, and your self envious of your own good, to deny them : Wherefore let me know your answer.

Constantia well knew that if she denyed, he would be offended, and his sroward nature was so much disposed to wrath, that befoze she could speak she shooke for fear ; yet resolving to hazard the worst, humbling her self upon her knees, she made this answer. My reverend duty to you, most loving Father, perswadeth my consent to fulfil your command, though my love binds me to the contrary, that I stand perplexed between two extremes ; the one fearing to offend you, the other to procure my everlasting discontent ; for in refusing to do according to your will, I shall incur your indignation, and in performing the same, my everlasting sorrow, for as yet, my heart could never yield to love that worthy Prince, who is far too worthy to be matcht with me ; most humbly beseeching you to consider, that forced love never breeds content, but disquiet, which with Helion, will be my portion, therefore I beseech you reboke your determination.

Is it even so? (quoth he) shall my command be counterbailed by your peevish conceit ? Is this the regard you gave to my good will ? Are you wiser than I ? or are you willing to displease me ? Shall my will stand at your direction ? Is this the duty you owe to your Father ? Or fear you no more to offend me ? Have I so carefully brought you up, and tenderly regarded you for this ? Henceforth never come in my sight, for I will not esteem thee as a Child, but as a Bastard ; and withal, I vow, that if thou dost not yield to marry him, use him kindly, and apply thy devotions to his liking, I will use thee in such sort, that all Persia shall lament thy case. Having given her this bitter reproof, he departed, leaving her weeping the fountain of her eyes dry, wringing her hands, and like one in a dead Trance overcome with grief, cast upon the Earth. The first that entered the room was Helion, who seeing her in that agony, took her by the hand to have raised her from the ground ; but she refusing his help, uttered these speeches. Until this time I always esteemed honourably of you, but now my good opinion is altered, for that you seek only my torment : My Father hath given me charge to marry with you, which I must, against my Heart, fulfil ; but be assured

never to possess my love, for that I have bequeathed to another, only my outward parts may be yours, but my inward affections shall continually esteem you as the only occasioner of my endless miseries; with that she arose from the ground and departed, leaving him there as one astonied.

Piera made Constantia's estate known to Deloratus, who so far as he durst, perswaded her Father not to constrain her to marry the Prince: but such wilfulness possessed him, that the more they entreated him, the more contrarious he was, and therefore appointed the day for the Marriage to be within two months, and desiring the King of Arabia's Consent, he sent Ambassadors to that effect.

Piera hearing this, presently sent Messengers into Assyria, to certifie Persicles of all that had happened; and withal writ a Letter which contained the whole sum of Constantia's Consent to his Love; who withal diligence hastened until they arrived there, being presently conducted into his presence: After he had most kindly embraced them, he demanded how Piera did, and what Message they had brought from her? Whereupon they delivered the Letters they had brought; which when he had read, he commanded the Knights to give the Messengers honourable entertainment; and departed to his Tent: one way so much comforted, and another way so deeply troubled, that he sat down in a study, not knowing what to resolve upon.

When he had a long space meditated, with what contrarieties his Fortunes were cross, the danger his Country was in, how likely he was to lose Constantia, and how difficult to attempt her passion, and many others, at last he thought his Life should be nothing without her love; and therefore he fully resolved to hazard the same to attain it, but it seemed impossible, which way to accomplish the same. For first the Armenians war hazarded his Kingdom, whom he could not suddenly expel: Next to attempt to win by force, that could not be, for the Persian was too mighty, Lastly, delay might breed a greater mischief than all the rest: then calling unto him two of his chiefest Nobles, the one named Pareus, a wise Counsellor, the other Thureus, a noble Warrior, he uttered his mind to them, saying, I have sent for you, as the men I most respect and trust, being determined to commit

commit to your charge the Government of my Kingdom, for that weighty business, and such as concerns my everlasting, must for a season withdraw me : And for that I am fully assured of your Loyalty, I will use no Exhortation to p^{er}suade you thereto, but order the same in this sort : Thureus reviv-
bling me much, both in proportion and countenance, shall in my absence take my room ; whom the people will assuredly take to be my self, and so govern them with more ease ; and you Parnus, by your wisdom order all things according thereto. Thus you know my mind, which I doubt not but you will accomplish in every respect according to my desire. They first entreated him not to depart, but when they saw nothing could prevail, they swore they would faithfully execute what he had given them in charge ; and likewise told them, that he would depart within three days, which he deferred so long, - by reason the second day the Armenians and Assyrians should meet ; having ended his conference with them, he returned to the Messengers that came from Persia, sending Letters to Piersa, which gave her knowledge that he would be there suddenly.

The prefixed day for the battel was now come, and both Armies met, betwixt whom there was a terrible fight, and many thousands on both sides slain : The Armenians greedy of their Enemies overthrow, followed them so eagerly, that they began to sound a Retreat : Persicles seeing that, left the place of his Government, and with his Lance ready couched, met an Armenian Duke so full, that he pierced the same quite through his body, then drawing his Sword, with the same he slew the next, and after him, wounded others ; that within a while he made such slaughter amongst them, that they avoided the place of his sight, and thought themselves best that were furthest off him. Thus valorously did he pursue them, till he was unawares in the midst of their Army, which advantage the King of Armenia espied, and thinking his life within his power, ran at him with a Lance, pointed with steel, but it mist him ; and Persicles seeing him, met so full with the pommel of his Sword against his breast, that had not his Sword yielded, he had broke his back : with that the Armenians assailed him round about with such unequal odds, being a multitude to one, that sometimes they were thrust so near upon.

upon him in the throng that they swayed him up and down, those
~~the~~ the next him dyed by his sword, their dead bodies falling
~~between his~~ between his Steeds legs, which made him lay about with
~~his~~ his sword, that he soon made them give way. In the mean time,
 whilst the most part of the battel were bent to destroy him, the
 Assyrians had made such a laughter amongst the out-wings of
 the Army, that most of them were slain, and the rest fled, Thru-
 reus fearing Persicles's harm, for that he missed him, with his
 followers, soon found him out, and by that means rescued him
 from the multitude, who had unhorsed him, being constrained to
 fight on foot, being scarce able to withhold himself from stumbling
 o're the dead Carcasses of those whom he had slain. Thru-reus soon
 got him remounted, and then both of them pursued their enemies
 so fiercely, that they began to fly; and had not the day then end-
 ed, they had all been destroyed, which caused Persicles to sound a
 Retreat, and betake him to his Tent, having that day done such
 deeds at arms, as made both his own Subjects, and the Arme-
 nians admire him.

Early the next morning word was brought him, that his ene-
 mies were all fled, and not any of them to be found in the Camp,
 having left all their riches behind them; which much rejoiced
 Persicles to hear, for that they should be no hindrance to his jour-
 ney, and commanded his Souldiers to take the spoil, and bury
 the Dead; and because he had received never a mortal wound, he
 determined the next day to depart, which he acquainted Pareneus
 and Thru-reus withal, requesting them not to discover his ab-
 sence till his return.

Having ordered every thing according to his mind, the next
 morning he departed, attiring himself like a Palmer, with a
 staff in his hand, which disguise shadowed him from knowledge,
 that he pass his own Court-gates undiscerned, which assured him,
 that if his own Subjects and Servants knew him not, much less
 would strangers, that he passed without fear of being discovered.
 In this sort did he travel, thinking it no penance to take pains
 to find out his Love, until he arrived in Persia, yet not knowing
 which way to accomplish his intent, or come to the speech either
 of Piera or Constantia, for he was a stranger, being denyed to
 enter the Court-gates, where he stayed attending his good for-
 tune

tune some three days; but as far from hopes then, as at his first coming, that he was so tormented in his thoughts, that he could not tell what to do. The next day he heard that the King should go forth a hunting, which made him presently suppose (for that the Park was so near the Court) the Ladies likewise would see the pastime, hoping by some means or other to give one of them knowledge of his arrival, then he did write a Letter, the Contents thereof were these.

To *Constantia*, or *Piera*.

THESE I write to either of you, my fortune being doubtful to whom I should deliver this: The Palmer that delivered this Letter, is *Pericles*, that desireth to speak with one of you; for he saith, you are both as dear to him as his own Soul: Attending a happy hour, I end,

Yours, *Pericles*.

The next day according to his hopes, the King and Queen, Deloratus, *Piera*, *Helion* and *Constantia*, and many others came forth, whom *Pericles* soon espied, and well noting *Constantia's* countenance, perceived the same to be darkened, as if she had been fully possessed with discontent; whocoming near him, (for he stood so as they must pass by him) casting her eyes upon him, beheld him so earnestly, that she almost forgot her self, feeling her Heart to throb with unwonted motion, that she let fall her rich Scarf, most curiously Embroidered; which occasion *Pericles* soon espied, as waiting for such an opportunity, took up the Scarf, and with a great reverence gave it her, conveying the letter closely therein, that she soon espied the same, where with her heart began to pant, and viewing the superscription, found it directed to her, or *Piera*, that closely she put the same in her bosom, lest *Helion* or any else should spy it, till she could find opportunity to read it. By this time the Game was roused, and all but she alone followed the pastime with earnestness; which she beholding, withdrew her self with one of her Ladies, and read the Letter, the which affected her heart with joy and fear, that sometimes her Heart

leap'd

leap'd with the one, and her eyes stood ready to overflow with tears with the other; presently following the company until she overtook Piera, to whom she said, Sister, did not you behold the Palmer that stood in the way as we came by the Palace Wall? Yes, (quoth she) and do not you know him said Constantia? It is your Brother Pericles.

With that she smiled saying, How can that be, or what maketh you to think so? With that she pulled out the Letter, and bad her read it, which when she had done, she said, Constantia, he is worthy to be kindly used, having travelled so far on foot to see us. Yes, (quoth Constantia) how can we come to speak with him? Or how may we give him that welcome his worthiness deserves, that for my unworthy self, hath undertaken to hazard his Royal Person in Travel? Let me alone (quoth Piera) and the better to avoid suspicion, use Helion somewhat more kindly than heretofore you have done, that his mind may be void of jealousy, for I perceive when you come in any place or company, he hath a vigilant eye over you.

And calling to her a Damsel named Dela, one that was privy to all her secret counsels, to whom she said, Go thy way, and find out the Palmer that thou sawest as we came, for it is Pericles; conduct him into my Chamber, where let him stay till I return; and if any one ask thee what he is, tell them he is of Assyria, and bringeth me news from the King my Brother.

Dela hastened and soon found him out, reverently saluting him, and called him by his name, which made him marvel that she knew him, until she delivered her Message, which he was ready to seal, as the only thing he desired: And having brought him into the Court, which she did without contradiction, she returned to certify her Mistress thereof, whom she met with Constantia, and some few before the rest, returning to the Court, being desirous to see Pericles, who now entered the Palace, were soon espied of him, which affected his heart with such content, as it seemed to ravish his senses.

Constantia was possessed likewise with such contrarious passions, sometimes of Fear, Joy, Bashfulness, Desire, and modest Love, that her heart seemed to dissolve, and all the Arteries of her body wrought with internal and strange motions: By this time

time they were ascended the stairs, and Persicles ready to meet them, who first saluted Piera, (as reserving the best for the last) which he performed superficially, in respect of the behaviour he used to Constantia, whose modesty made her blush, whilst he be-reached her of a sweet kiss, who, with as mild a countenance, as if modesty her self had been there, she had welcome.

Most divine Lady (quoth he) I cannot express my thankfulness by outward means, for that my heart both wisheth, and intendeth more good to you, than my tongue can utter, being so far bound to you, (in respect of my slender and small deserts) for your esteeming well of me, that I shall never be able to discharge the debt: And although they have little cause, by reason of the small proof you have heard of my Fidelity, to yield me love, yet if my faithful voto may satisfy you, and my plighted promise of continual constancy assure you, you shall find me both constant in love to you, faithful to deal honourably with you, and loyal, not intending to do any thing that shall be disagreeable to your will.

My Lord, (said Constantia) in full assurance of your good meaning, my heart willingly affecting you more than any other, without further delay, I yield my self up to your disposition, desiring you not to misconceive me: And though I am unworthy of such account as you make of me, my possession being linked to so many inconveniencies; yet since it is your desire to have it so, I am ready to be ruled according to your directions.

Piera then said, Let further conference for this time cease, because I hear of the Kings return; and for this night I will provide for my Brothers security, with whom I will confer about this business, until you may conveniently meet again.

This said, Persicles took his leave of Constantia, with many ceremonious farewells, each party interchanging their hearts, such perfect love was between them. Persicles went to a secret Chamber to meditate; Piera to accompany her Husband, and Constantia with an outward merry, (though inwardly heavy) heart to welcome Helion.

CHAP. III.

How *Constantia* disguised her self, and departed the Emperours Court with *Pericles*.

WITHIN this place stay'd *Pericles*, so long without means how to accomplish his desire, which was to convey away to *Constantia*, that the prestid day for the performance of the Marriage approached near, which drove them to their utmost shifts, that now or never it was to be done.

Constantia coming to *Piera's* Chamber, with an heavy heart, and watry eyes, demanded whether they had yet determined how she should escape? but hearing them make no answer, said thus: My Lord, since the fear you have I should be discovered, and so dishonoured, maketh you unwilling to have me hazard my self: The time of my pretended Wedding now draweth nigh, which I most abhor, because I love none but your self; provide but for your own departure out of the Court, without being discovered, and stay for me in the Evening under the Mistle-Tree by the *Pallace-Wall*, and thither will I assuredly come to you; but by what means, as yet I know not.

Pericles was glad to hear her speeches, but he was much troubled in mind, that his misfortune was such, that he could not carry her from thence, without she her self should hazard her escape alone: Nevertheless, seeing her forwardness, which was an infallible token of her constancy; with many thanks and farewells, until their happy meeting again, they parted, with such careful hearts, and outward signs of sorrow as was sufficient to have made the hardest heart of any remorseless beholder to lament them.

Pericles soon departed, and without disturbance (for in that Habit he was not known) and soon got to the Mistle Tree, where under he sat down, and uttered many invocations for his wretched escape; thinking that she alone should endure
this

this hazard, but whatsoever extremity did follow, should be boyn by him.

Constantia being in her Chamber with Dela, many thoughts possess her fancy, and sundry devises were soon invented, and as soon out of content, that many she bethought her of, but none of them seemed current. At last, looking out of a Window, she espied a Country Damsel enter the outer Court of the Palace, with a Basket on her Arm, wherein were Grapes; which she came of purpose to present unto Constantia for their fairness, being a gift worthy of acceptation. The Porter knowing her mind, sent her to the Princesses Chamber with a Gentleman. Constantia seeing that she came to her, caused her to come in, receiving her present most graciously: The Gentleman being departed, Dela, by Constantia's appointment, led the Maid into a secret Chamber; telling her, that it was her Mistresses pleasure so much to grace her, that she should attend on her, and not return to her Fathers house. The Damsel being glad of that preferment, gave her many thanks: Dela then caused her to put off her own apparel, and put on Constantia's; which done, she left her, and carried her homely weeds to Constantia, which she presently put on, disrobing her self of her rich Ornaments, casting aside all other care, but only to attain her love: And the evening being come, (the time of her everlasting weal, or wo) she took the Damsels Basket on her Arm; and first, with many farewells to Dela, commendations to Piera, and heavy sighs to leave her Parents, not knowing what misfortune might befall her, with the water standing in her eyes, which to her utmost power she restrained, did go down the stairs, and from thence into the Court, behaving her self so decently, that none that met her, had any thought but that she had been a perfect Damsel; and so she passed until she came to the Porter, who knowing of her coming in, denyed not to let her out. Constantia having passed thus far without suspect, thought not to be long in going to the appointed place, but fear and hope hastening her steps, she sometimes ran, and sometimes went, and then again looked behind her, as if some pursued her; ran until she had got a sight of the tree, where under she came, she beheld her love, who afar off beheld her; but in that habit knew her not; to whom she approached so nigh, that he

noting her well, knew her, and embraced her in his arms, saying: My dearest Love, a thousand times welcome, and moze desired of me, than all the Riches in the World; for ever shall this day be blest, and the hour of this our happy meeting accounted fortunate; let all that wear this habit be happy, and enjoy their most desired content; and let this Tree, wheresoever growing, be esteemed above all others, for that it was the appointed place of our meeting; let the Evening be the most pleasant time for Lovers meeting; and let all those be fortunate in their meetings, whose hearts harbour true love. My dear (quoth he) I cannot express the joy my heart conceives at your presence, being sorry that you are thus driven to hazard your person for my sake; being as likewise sorry that I have no place of security to carry you unto; for in this place we must not stay long; therefore let us depart the nearest way to Assyria, and Fortune that hath shewed her self so gentle, may favour us with moze happy success.

My Lord (quoth Constantia) now that I have attained your presence, I have found the Harbor I expected, where my heart shall rest, what hereafter you shall intend, I will be as well contented with, as your self; therefore direct your steps what way you please, I will bear you company.

*Persicles his heart was glad to see her so chearful, that folding his arms in hers, the night being now approached, they walked along: She by the way discoursing on the manner of her escape.

To relate the conference between them were too tedious, but the most part of the night they continued travelling so fast, as Constantia's feeble legs would carry her, who though not accustomed to such labour, yet endured the same so chearfully, as it had been a wonder to behold; but at last arriving in a solitary place, where seldom any frequented but Shepherds, the Night being far spent, and Constantia weary, they seated themselves down upon a bank, and their minds being now somewhat eased of cares, their bodies wearied with travel, and the place void of disturbance; after some delightful conference, Constantia slept, and Persicles did the like, not awaking till the Suns bright Beams glimmering upon them, awaked them.

Persicles

Pericles's heart now began to be troubled where to get food for Constantia, which he was out of hope to attain in those Solitary Walks; and rising up to view the place well, and which way next to travel, he espied a Shepherds Cottage hard by, to which he and Constantia went, and knocking at the Door, the Shepherds Wife came forth, who espying such unlooked for Guests, started back, saying, What would you have?

Mother, (said Pericles) my Wife and I (so he thought best to call her, to avoid suspicion) travelling towards Assyria, by misfortune yesterday-night, lost our way, and having wandered up and down all this night, that we are both weary, especially my Wife, who hath not been used to such unrest; Our desire is to rest our selves, and get us food, if it may be, in this place; which kindness if you will afford us, we will pay you for the charge we put you to, and withal rest thankful.

The Shepherdes noting them well, thought them other than their habit declared, with whom his kind words so much prevailed, that she desired them to come in, telling them that all her house rested at their disposition, so they both entred, and willingly sat down to rest themselves; but Pericles asking the Old Woman what meat she had? She told him she had none at all; but if it pleased him, she would be ready to fetch any thing he would send for, at a Village hard by.

Whereupon the Old Woman went out to buy meat, leaving them in the house alone; in whose absence, Pericles desired Constantia not to be offended with him, for saying she was his wife? For (said he) should I name you my Sister, or otherwise, it would breed in them some suspicion; withal, they hearing of your escape, which may be some means or other to come to their knowledge, will the sooner suspect you; but under that name, you are void of Knowledge.

Constantia was content to be ruled by him in any thing, whose heart would now have conceived the height of content, had not fear to be discovered darkened the same. In which place we will leave them to speak of Helion.

CHAP. IV.

Of a merry Jest that befel *Helion*, Prince of *Arabia*.

Constantia being down the stairs, Dela as soon left the Country Maid, to tell Piera what was done ; and to ask her counsel what to do ; who hearing all, at last bad her return to the Damsel, and carry her some meat for her supper, but so closely, that none might see her go out, or in ; which Dela performed, and telling her where she should lye, left her, altering her Garments and Attires in such sort, that she knew her not again. The Maid being alone, was soon tempted to taste these dainty meats, for that she was very hungry, thinking her self most happy to be so craved, and daintily fed ; and seeing her soft Bed, her Belly being full, and being at home not used to sit up late, drawing the Curtains close about her, she was no sooner laid, but fell asleep.

Helion all that evening, marvelled he could not see Constantia, but not seeing Piera, was satisfied, thinking they had been together. When Supper was ended, he determined to see her, and went to Piera's Chamber, thinking to find her there : who told him that she was not there that afternoon : From thence he went to her lodging, and finding the door shut, which being but latch't, he opened it, and shut it softly again ; and with stealing steps, passed through the first room unto the next, where he saw a light burning through the Hangings, which he softly lifted aside, and looking into the Chamber, saw no body, but Constantia's apparel there, and drawing nigh the bed perceived that she was asleep, and standing by her, as being loath to awake her, yet unwilling to leave her, he uttered these meditations.

Swart Fortune hath appointed this happy hour, in favour of my true Love, that hath with constancy long attended my love, but never was graced with any title of her favour ; which opportunity if I over-slip, it may be I shall never attain the like : If I should attempt to awake her, could she be offended ? If I should farther ask her consent to possess her love, could she take it in ill part ? No, she knows my Love is Loyal, and therefore will
not

not be offended. But this feareth me most, I never as yet had any favour at her hand; She for ought I see, regarded me not, but instead of my love, repays me with scorn; yet in that I may be deceived: Peradventure she hath used me so, to make tryal of me; and also done this to try whether I would, like a Coward, for fear of displeasure, leave the scaling of so sweet a Fort, there-fore be my Fortune good or bad, I will hazard the worst. Then taking the Damsel by the hand, who slept so soundly, that he could hardly awake her, said: Constantia, be not offended with me, it is your faithful friend Helion, that speaks to you; missing you, I have thus boldly presumed into your Chamber, which I found but slightly shut, and fearing you had been sick, I came to visit you; desiring you to grant me this favour, both to pardon this bold intrusion, and let me stay to be your Guardian; which said, very boldly he kiss the Damsel twice or thrice. The Maiden hearing his speeches, was so amazed, that she could not speak; involving many things in her doubtful brain what he should be, and why the Princess had appointed her in that place: But being unacquainted with the fashions of the Court, she thought it had been the custom there (as she had heard her Father report) for every one to have a Lover, lay still, and said nothing; which animated Helion to such confidence, that, fastning the doo, extinguishing the light, and putting off his Apparel, he leapt into the Bed; and first asking pardon with many humble speeches, repeating with what constancy he had deserved her, and how faithfully he intended for ever to love her; he folded her in his Arms, using such behaviour as soon tempted the Damsel to yield; whom he bereft of her Virginitie, to both their contents: He on one side thinking he had embraced the fair Constantia, and she supposing she had got a Rich and kind Lover.

When he had stayed with her so long as he could, for fear of being discovered, for that the day began to appear, he told her that now, to his hearts grief he must leave her; which she was unwilling he should do; that by her embraces, kisses, and other kind behaviour, he stayed longer than he would have done; and took such full possession of her before he went, that she thought her self the happiest Maid alive, and he himself the most fortun-
nately

nately blessed in the possession of so sweet a Love. At last parting with many farewells, the Damsels eyes somewhat dazled with the sport, laid her down again and slept soundly, until she thought it time to rise.

When the day was somewhat aged by the height of the Sun, Helion with an exceeding merry countenance, taking a Rich standing Cup of beaten Gold, full fraught with the purest Wine, attiring himself in the Richest Robes, went to Constantia's Chamber to present her therewith, and entering therein, he found his Bed fellow attired in Constantia's Dynaments; with which sight he was so amazed, that he stood like one in a Trance, thinking himself either blind, or that he was Metamorphosed.

The Damsel likewise espying him, was ashamed to see him stand gazing on her with such a wild countenance, that she blushed exceedingly; at last Helion fearing some deceit, said, where is Constantia, that you are attired in her Dynaments: to whom the Damsel made answer, I know not where she is, her Maid had me put on this apparel yesterday, appointing me to stay here till her return.

Helion then perceiving that he was deceived, and the Damsel, instead of Constantia, had been his Paramour that Night, whom he desired to tell him whether Constantia had of purpose perswaded her to do that, and also if she knew where she was: for know (quoth he) thou hast not bestowed thy Virginitie on an unworthy person, but upon the Prince of Arabia.

The Damsel humbling her self upon her knees, told him all that she knew, whereby he then perceived that Constantia was fled, by reason that he could not find the Damsels Apparel, and taking her by the hand, said, Damsel, I perceive Constantia still rejecteth me, and therefore, as thou in her stead hast taken possession of my Love, that good will and affection which formerly I bare to her, will I bare to thee, and hereafter prefer thee to such Dignity, as otherwise thou shouldst never attain unto; withal, requesting thee to conceal my being with thee this Night from any, for if it should be known, it would rebound to thy punishment, and my shame: But when question is made for Constantia, tell all thou knowest of thy coming hither. but nothing of me. And in sign of my good will, I drink to thee in this Cup
of

of Wine, which I thought Constantia should have tasted of: This said, he left the Damsel, and so secretly as he might, he went to his owne lodging, so grieved in his mind, that he vowed to be revenged, were it by never so cruel means, in his heart hating her, whom he before loved on; which is a sign of an inconstant disposition, for true love will never alter.

It was not long before Constantia was missed, and the news thereof came to the Emperour her Father, who with the Emperess marvelled thereat, causing all diligent search to be made, but no other news was heard of her, but that she was gone, and a stranger left in her stead; who being brought before the Emperour, told the cause of her coming, and how she was used by a Gentlewoman that waited on Constantia; whereupon the Emperour caused all the Ladies and Gentlewomen in the Court to come before him; but amongst them all, she could not tell which was she, for Dela had altered her apparel in such sort, that the Damsel was ignorant of knowing her, as any of the rest.

The Emperour was so exceedingly enraged, that he was ready to tear the hair from his head, commanding that the Damsel should be punished, but at the entreaty of the Emperess, he was only in disgraceful sort turned out of the Court Gates: The Emperour at that time in a great rage, betaking himself to his Solitary Chamber, to study which was the best way to find his Daughter.

Helion pitying the Damsel, being now more in love with her then ever he was with Constantia, called unto him one of his most trustiest servants, willing him in secret sort to follow the Maid, and to give her a Purse of Gold, and tell her who sent it, and to conduct her home to her Fathers house, that he may know where to find her; which done, he presently went to the Emperour, desiring him speedily to send forth Messengers to find Constantia, who thinking he had requested him thereunto with his former pretence of love, caused twenty of his Knights privately to be brought before him, to whom he declared his intent, which was That (without making any privy thereunto) they should that night depart several ways in search for his Daughter the Lady Constantia.

All things being compleat according to his mind, and the

Knights having taken their Oaths of Fidelity and Secrecie, and departed, the Emperour rested, calming his disquiet with so merry a countenance; as none supposed but that he had remitted all in regard of Constantia, which was so closely affected, that the Knights were dispersed every where in the Country, before any question was made of her absence.

Helion's servant, Sir-named Aldrus, soon overtook the Damselfel, delivering her the gift his Lord had sent, which she received with many thanks; telling her likewise, that he had sent him to attend her home, which she was also glad of, fearing her Parents displeasure for staying so long, who knows her not at first sight, but afterwards was satisfied by Aldrus, who learning her name, which was Selia, left her.

CHAP. V.

The pleasures that passed between the two faithful Lovers, *Pericles* and *Constantia*, in the Shepherds Cottage: And how a Knight that was sent in their search, found them.

NOW the day being far spent, the Shepherds Wife returned with the provision which she had bought, dressing the same very cleanly, though after her Country fashion; whereon *Pericles* and *Constantia* fed heartily, spending the rest of the day in talk with the Old Woman, until at night the Old Shepherd and his Son came home, who wondered to see such Guests at his house, and such cheer at the fire; who was wont to sup with a Crab put into some Ale; and calling aside his Wife, before they would enter, demanded what they were: Husband, (quoth she) they came hither in the morning, desiring me to let them have but house-room; for losing their way, they have wandered about all night, and are so weary; they are the kindest people that ever I saw; good Husband bid them welcome. The good Old Man yielded so kind by his Wives entreaty, that he came in, telling them they were most heartily welcome, and that all he had was at their command.

Pericles gave them many thanks, being much comforted with their

their kindness, which he found disagreeing to the humours of Rustick people. Supper time ended, the Old Woman called her Husband aside, to know where they should lye: Harry (quoth he) in our storied, and we for this time will make some other provision; therefore make the same ready in the best sort you possibly can.

Which said, the Old Woman went about the same, and the Old Man coming to them, said: Because I know you not, I cannot tell what Title to give unto you, but less than boyn of Noble blood I am sure you are not: I am sorry my wealth affordeth me no better entertainment to welcome you withal, but such as our homely Cottage yieldeth, shall be at your disposition; desiring you to accept of our good will, instead of better performance. My Wife is making ready your bed, which though homely, yet it is cleanly, we having no choice but only that, desiring you to accept it as the best.

I thank you good friend (quoth Pericles) but we shall be unmannerly to thrust you forth of your own lodging, therefore we will rather sit up, than disturb you. Not so, said the Old Woman, I have all my life time been brought up to hardness; and can endure it well, which I am sure you cannot do, without hazard of your healths. Then came the old woman, who brought them a light to conduct them to the Chamber, which she had dressed so finely with green Rushes, and sweet Flowers, that it was most pleasant, though not costly, and leaving them there, departed.

Constantia seeing them gone, began to blush, to think she must be Pericles's Bed-fellow; which he perceiving, folding her in his Arms, said, Now Constantia, you must be a Wife before you are Married, which name you cannot refuse, having given your consent thereto already: I must of force be your Bed-fellow, unless you would have me lye on the green Rushes; therefore I pray you tell me, whether you are willing to favour me so much or no?

Constantia betwixt a modest bashfulness, and a modest desire, stood mute not knowing whether to consent or deny: Sometimes thinking her denial might disquiet him, and to yield might make him suspect her of lightness; so that between fear and hope, she continued silent, as if she had been overcome with a deep study.

Pericles smiling thereat, said, My dear Love, I know with what motives your mind is now agitated : If you think it will impair your honour to be my Bed-fellow, I will rather lose my life than perswade you thereto, but if you vouchsafe to let me lie by you in most vertuous sort, I protest it shall be no dishonour to you, nor your Virgin purity shall not be spotted in the least thought of any unlawful attempt ; wherein if you will trust me, you shall find that I will use you both as sa meth your estate, agræes with your honour, and the vertuous meaning of a true Friend.

My Lord, (said Constantia) do not think me so immodest as to distrust you, or so curious to think it will impair my name to be your Bed-fellow ; only I wish that the Rites of Parriage were perfozmed, then I were at your disposition.

Lady, (said he) what needeth such strict perfozrance of those outward Ceremonies, which maketh not the Parriage : but those are truly Parried, that with united hearts have plighted promise of perpetual friendship, electing one another by true love, and not outward Ceremony ; for where true love is not, there can be no perfect Parriage, though the outward Ceremony be never so devoutly perfozmed ; therefore if my opinion can prebail with you, we being without means to use the outward Ceremony, may confirm as true and constant a contract between our selves, as though it were established by the Rites of the Church. This also makes me to use these reasons, since the means of the perfozrance of that being wanting, we may nevertheless procure our happyness ; for who are more happy than those that live in perfect love, though never so miserable : for my part, I esteem your company above all joy, and the fruition of your love more dear to me, than a thousand lives without the same : When I beseech you, let my entreaties so much prebail, that I may with your free consent possess your love, for I bow never to love, or chuse any other than your self.

Constantia hearing his speeches, and many other reasons that he alleged, made this answer : My Lord, relying upon your vertues, true love, and honourable meaning, I yield to your request, giving my consent to be your Wife for ever, desiring you to dispose of me according to your mind, for you shall find me always

ways obedient to your command. These speeches ended, with many kind embraces they addrest themselves to their Bridal Bed, which resembled such a Bed indeed; for the Old Woman had deck'd the Bed with her best Linnen, and other furniture, stuck the same round about with sweet Roses, strewed the Chamber with green Rushes, filled the windows with green Boughs and Flowers, so thick in every place, giving such a sweet savour that it might well be termed a Shepherds Paradise.

The two Lovers being in bed, used that behaviour such Lovers do, thinking themselves fortunate, the place pleasant, their meeting happy, and their love sweet, enjoying their love without controul, love without lust, and pleasure without pride; he thinking his joys without compare, and she thinking none to be compared with hers, and the birds without, singing their ditties instead of Musick, and the sweet Philomela hard by the wall with a merry note, rejoiced at their pleasure.

Thus did they pass over this night with exceeding content, and next day in communication with the Shepherd, who committed both the flocks to the Government of his Son, for that himself would stay to bear them company, to whom he bare such an inward love, wrought in him by a natural motion, that he did think himself happy to do them any pleasure.

They stayed three days with the Shepherd, being past fear to be discovered, for they heard not of any enquiry that was made after them: At last one of the Knights that the Emperour of Persia had privily sent forth in their search, chanced to come into the Plains where the Shepherds Son was keeping his Sheep, to whom he said; Shepherd, dost thou not see a Damsel lately pass this way? Not I, answered he, why? what damsel is it you look for? The Knight either by his countenance or stammering in his answer, supposing it might be he had seen her, said: It is a friend of mine, that I esteem dearly, she promised me I should hear of her hereabout, but my fortune hath not been so good. I cannot tell (said the Boy) it may be my Father can tell you, who dwelleth hard by yonder Thicket.

The Knight hearing that, left him, and rode to the Shepherds House, where he alighting, entred without calling, and found the

the Shepherd, his Wife, Persicles and Constantia, all together, and presently knowing her, said, Lady Constantia, the Emperour your Father, makes great lamentation for you at the Court: with that they knew they were betrayed; and she, with much fear and grief, fell down in a Trance, whom with much ado, they recovered. My friend (quoth Persicles) thou art either very unmannerly, or thy Authority is great, that thou intrudest thy self into our company; dost thou know this is Constantia? When where is thy reverence to her? Were it not for disquieting the Lady that is already distempred with thy presence, thou shouldst find cold entertainment.

The Knight being much grieved to see Constantia thus disquieted, said, I am sorry my presence hath troubled her, which was against my mind, for be it far from my thoughts to disturb her. The Emperour of Persia missing her, hath sent out divers besides my self to seek her, with commandment to bring her back to the Court, and amongst the rest, you see it is fallen to my lot to perform it; yet such regard I do bear unto her, that I will not do any thing disagreeing to her honourable mind: Constantia hearing his speeches, said, what is your name? My name (said he) is Pisor. Art thou of Assyria (quoth Persicles) and one of the Knights belonging to Piers? I am, said he, When I fear not said Persicles, but thou bearest a Knightly mind, and wilt rather conceal this Ladies being here, then betray her, by carrying her back; if not for hers, yet for Persicles's thy King, whom she loves, and thou shouldst obey.

If it were (quoth he) to venture my Life for my Prince, I would most willingly do it; and if the Lady loveth him, and for that hath left the Court, I will hazard my life in her defence, and to my utmost power, procure her hearts desire. Then know (quoth he) that Persicles heareth thy kind speeches, and hath not failed in his opinion of thy virtues; for I am he, though thus disguised; with that Pisor knew him, and humbled himself with great reverence on his knee.

Persicles rising up, embraced him, telling him that he came in a most fortunate hour to do him good. Constantia with this, was comforted again, and forgot her former passion and fear. The Old Shepherd and his Wife were half amazed, until Persicles said,

said, Father, be not any way disquieted with my knowledge, for though I am King of Assyria, I am thy Guest, and will requite thy kindness liberally, desiring thee not to discover me to any; for if thou shouldst, it would hazard this Ladies life, and mine, that are now in thy hands; They both bowed on their knees, nothing should make them so disloyal. When he said to Pisor, of old experience I know thou lovest me; therefore I question not thy Fidelity, or doubt that thou wilt undertake any thing to pleasure me; therefore I would have thee with all speed to pass into Assyria, to Parenus and Thureus, whom I left my Substitutes, and to them make my estate known, telling them my desire is, that they come to me in this place with a sufficient number of Horse-men to guard me and the Princess home; but let none know their intent; (which I took to be the best course for our safety) for if we should seek other means by travel, Constantia is not able to endure it, which also might be a means to discover us, so many being abroad in her search. Pisor presently obeyed him, and taking his leave, departed on his journey, leaving them in the Shepherds Cottage.

CHAP. VI.

How *Helion* was in love with *Selia*, and hearing of his Fathers sickness, obtained leave to depart: And of the Desolation that was in *Assyria*, by the Treason of Duke *Oreus*.

Helion remembering the pleasure he had with his Country Lover, desired much to see her again; with whom he was more deeply in love than ever he was with Constantia; for the love he bare to her, was turned to hatred; and the cause of his opportunity to the Empero; to have her found, was with a malicious disposition of revenge, not of any honorable inclination, being of such a variable and unconstant nature, that the least occasion altering his wavering mind, either to love, or hatred, which was unfit for so great a man as he derived himself from.

Now having passed many days, colouring his presence under the shadow of feigned sorrow, he longed to visit his Lover *Selia*, there

therefoze finding a fit time foꝛ his intent, he with his man Aldrus rode thither, and found her cloathed again in her Country Meeds, who espying him, with a modest blush came to meet him whom he imbraced in his arms, asking her how she fared? My Lord (said he) your hand-maid rejoyceth to see your woꝛthy person in this homely Cottage, whose heart can attain no quiet, but in your remembrance. By this time her Parents was come in, who seeing the Prince, did him humble reverence, he also saluting them with great courtesie, and when he had staid there most part of the day in private conference with his Love, he departed, the next day repairing thither again, which he did likewise foꝛ many days after.

In the end he grew to such extremity of passion, that he told Selia he would marry her, and withal, made her Parents acquainted therewith, who willingly gave their consents thereto: and by this means he enjoyed her company at all times, according to his desire.

In this sort did he visit her many days, doting exceedingly on his Country Selia, thinking no Lady in the Court comparable unto her, and also dissembling exceeding grief foꝛ Constantia, that the Emperoz highly commended his constancy, esteeming him the moze foꝛ not altering his mind. Within few days news was brought to the Persian Court, that the King of Arabia was very sick, which caused Helion to desire the Emperoz of Persia's consent to his departure, which he granted, having first receiv'd his faithfull Oath to marry Constantia, which he sware to perform at his return.

Most of the Knights that went in the search of Constantia, are returned, not one of them bringing news of her, which put the Emperoz into such a rage, that he seemed quite bereft of sense, causing them to make moze open enquiry, and to promise great rewards to those that could tell any tydings of her.

By this time Pisor had been in Assyria, and again returned to the Shepherds house, whom Persicles welcomed, and glad that he was so soon returned: But Pisors countenance signified ill news, which Persicles soon perceived, and being unwilling Constantia should hear ought that might breed in her any discontent, walked aside with him into the Thicket of a Wood hard by

by the House, where Pisor said : My Lord, I have a Tragick discourse to reveal : that maketh my heart melt to think thereof, which I would it had not been my ill fortune to have brought you news of.

At my coming into Assyria, I past many miles before I found an Assyrian to converse withal : For the Towns and Villages, which before were compleat with store of Inhabitants, were now consumed with fire, and not a house standing alone, but was spoiled, and the people from their dwellings fled away, which caused me to make the more haste, hoping that all was not destroyed ; and coming more near the Court, in my way, I found the bodies of the Assyrians lying dead, and strewd upon the earth, as if some battel had been lately fought in that place, those which lay dead seeming to have fled to save their lives.

And the farther I past, the more the number encreased, which I followed so long, that I was perswaded those that destroyed them, were not far off ; but yet went so far before me, that I could not overtake them, for the bodies of some were not yet cold, and others lay struggling to overcome death ; wherewith I was so amazed, that I set spurs to my Horses side, and rode with all the haste I could, until at last I espied a mighty army of Soldiers right before me upon the Mount of Silo, whose multitude seemed to be innumerable ; near unto which I was no sooner come, but I espied an Assyrian grievously wounded, to whom I drew nigh, and soon knew him to be Parenus, and discovering my self to him, desired him to tell me what reason had brought him to that dangerous estate ; with that he knowing me, said, Pisor, such misery is befallen to us Assyrians, that we shall be a reproach and scandal to all the World, which I would repeat, but before I can make an end, death will stop my speech ; therefore tell me how my Lady Piera fareth.

Noble Duke. (said I) she is in good health, and in great prosperity : I rejoyce thereat (quoth he) though I have otherwise everlasting cause to sorrow : For our Sovereign Lord the King, after he had put the Armenians to flight, was very desirous upon some occasion (as yet unknown) to leave the Court, in his absence committing the Government thereof to my unhappy self, and the Noble Knight Thureus, which we performed with

great quiet, until Duke Oretus, one that was never true unto the State, hearing of the Kings departure, which we could by no means conceal, raised a false report, that we had murdered the King; which rumour moved the common people to such disorder, that they began to rebel; which he perceiving, aiming thereby to win the Crown, gathered a great company of them together; with pretence of revenge against us; which when we heard of, with all speed we could possibly, we mustered up men for our defence; but so eager were the multitudes to our destruction, together with Oretus's persuasions, that before we were any way able to resist them, they set upon us, and shed a great deal of their own Country-mens blood that stood in our defence, and constrained us to draw back our forces within the City.

The King of Armenia hearing of this Rebellion; with great speed, brought a mighty Army into this Land, destroying all that came in his way, burning both Towns and Cities, and destroying the common people with an exceeding great slaughter. Oretus hearing this, was struck with such a terror, that he fled, leaving his confederate Rebels to be destroyed by the Enemy, which caused us by a Herald to demand, whether they would submit themselves to us or not: or by their Treason to see their Countries ruin? With that they yielded, and we gathered all our forces together, to resist the Enemy, with whom we fought three great battels, and in the same, lost above thirty thousand Assyrians, being driven to flight. This day again, gathering a head to resist them, and being too few in number, in respect of their strength and multitude, you see how our bodies lie mangled upon the Earth, my self (I think) the last that lieth to tell this news; for the noble Thraeus is already slain, whose deeds of Valour would contain a great volume; which news, when our King hears, it will, no doubt, cut off his vertuous life with sorrow, my greatest grief being, that I cannot hear of his safety before my death.

My Lord, (said I) our Gracious King is living, and in good health in Persia, who sent me unto your Honour, and Thraeus with a Message, which I need not now unfold. Yes, good Pilor, (said he) let me hear my Lords Message, that I may thereby know, whether I was still in his favour or no; with that I told him

him the cause of my coming, which when he had heard, such a passion of discontent overcame his vital Spirits, that with many bitter groans, he gave up the Ghost. When I saw there was no way for his recovery, I departed, to enquire what slaughter the Enemy made; who by that time the day was ended, had vanquished the Assyrian forces, and took the City, and most of the Nobility Prisoners: I stayed four days, hiding me secretly, to bring you certain news which is this. The King of Armenia compelled the Noblemen to swear Allegiance to Palian his Eldest Son, whom he hath Crowned King of Assyria, and left a mighty Army for his defence: When I understood this, I returned to certify your Majesty thereof.

C H A P. VII.

How *Persicles* hearing the News by *Pisfor*, departed into a Solitary place, which caused the unfortunate separation betwixt him and *Constantia*, who in great sorrow wandring to seek him, was found by *Helion*, and carried into *Arabia*. Of the sorrows *Persicles* endured for her absence. How *Pisfor* became Frantick.

Persicles's heart was overcome with such sorrow, to hear *Pisfor*'s heavy news, that he had much ado to contain himself from extream madness, that he minded a while to withdraw himself to utter his complaints in those Solitary walks; but seeing *Pisfor* follow him, desired him to return to the Shepherds house, and in no case to acquaint *Constantia* with the misfortunes; but if she asked for him, he should tell her he would come presently. *Pisfor* being departed, he sought for the most unfrequented place in the Wood, wandered long in that discontent, but could find none agreeable to his mind; not knowing where he went, or where he intended, his senses being distord with that passionate vexation; continuing so long therein, that he spent longer time in seeking out a place of rest, than he was aware of, which turned to his greatest unrest, as afterwards it fell out; for *Constantia* marveling that he stayed so long, and noting *Pisfor*'s

darkened countenance, supposed some ill news to be the cause, and finding occasion fit, thought to find her Love in the midst of his dumps, and with her amiable presence to comfort him; so stealing from the Cottage into the Wood, where Pisor told her that he had left him, she wandered up and down a great while, not finding him, which made her wonder; sometimes calling him, but not by his own name, lest any should hear her: And finding that means to prevail nothing, she began to enter into many doubtful thoughts, sometimes calling his Loyalty in question, then again reprobing her fancy for entering into suspicion of him; then thinking some ill news was happened in Assyria, which might drive him into a careless desperation, fearing that some of the Persian Knights had met him, and finding some likelihood of suspicion in him, hath carried him to the King her Father. These meditations possess her mind so long, and wrought such terror in her fancies, that she feared like one that had been possess with the truth that it was so.

Thus did they both continue the most part of the day, she seeking him, and he oppressed with care, not remembering that it was time to return home; yet both of them directing their Steps a contrary way, that they met not, but wandered one from the other; at last he remembered where he was, how long he had been absent, and what care she would take for his absence, which caused him with as much speed to haste back, as with earnestness he had wandered up and down; which before he could attain, it grew towards night.

Pisor likewise marvelling at his long stay, and her sudden departure, fearing some ill might befall him, and some extraordinary care oppresses her, left the Cottage to find him; and if he could meet her, to direct her to the place where he left him.

When Persicles found them both absent, he marvelled thereat, enquiring of the Old Woman when they departed, who told him that Constantia went out first, and he after her; which made him think that she missing him so long, might go seek him, and Pisor followed her, thinking to direct her, lest she should wander astray (as she might well do) in those unrequented places. But when he had a long time continued in those dumps, and saw neither of them returned, he began to enter into many misdoubts, such

as proceed from the unquiet motions of distemper'd Cogitations, being fearful to depart from thence again, lest he might so miss them.

Pisfor being entred the Wood, came to the place where he had left Persicles, but could neither find him there, nor Constantia, which made him wander up and down so long, that he was weary. At last he came to a shady place, and laying himself down to rest, he cast up his Eyes, and espied most beautiful fruit upon a tree hanging right over his head; the sight thereof pleased him so well, that plucking some of the same, he found the taste pleasant, which caused him to eat many of them; which made him presently fall into a deadly sleep. The name of the fruit is called Pylois, the nature whereof is, to procure those that take it, first to sleep for the space of four and twenty hours, and after to become Frantick for the space of three months, which hindred Pisfor from returning.

When Persicles had staid so long, expecting their coming, until it began to be dark: He again went out, telling the Shepherd that he was going to seek them, cruel fortune directing his steps unto the place where Pisfor lay sleeping, whom when he beheld, but neither by calling nor any other means, could awaken him; a deadly fear possessed his fancy, that some furious beast had slain him, and either devoured Constantia, or pursued her, flying from him; which caused him like a mad man to draw forth Pisfors Sword, running up and down to seek that which was not there to be found.

Constantia by this time was wandred so far in search for Persicles, that she could by no means tell which way to go back again, but was constrained all that night to wander up and down with hope to have returned; but contrary to her thoughts went another way, her fear and care causing her to make the more speed, that being weary with travel, coming to the out-side of the Wood, she sat down upon a bank, and after she had bewailed her miserable estate, and wearied her senses with sorrow, as she had her body with travel, fell asleep.

Now it fell out that Helion the day before had taken his leave of the Emperour of Persia, to travel into Arabia, and that night lay at Selia's Fathers, causing her to be attyred in Rich Ornament

ments, that morning carried her into Arabia, intending there to make her his Bride, and by misfortune passed by the place where Constantia lay fast asleep : Some of his followers compassed her, and shewed her to Helion : Selia likewise seeing her presently told Helion, that her apparel was either the same which Constantia's Gentlewoman took from her in the Persian Court, or so like it, she could not tell one from the other. Helion rode to her, and awaked her ; by her former disposition and her countenance, which was still in his remembrance, he perfectly knew her, and she at the first sight, knew him ; which amazed her senses with deadly fear. To whom he said, My dear Constantia, what hath caused you thus discourteously to reject my love, and leave the Persian Court to endure this hard fortune, so much disagreeing to your Estate : yet at length I beseech you to accept of my love, and go with me into Arabia.

Leave off your dissembling speeches (quoth Constantia) and let me alone, for I had rather all my life lie on this cold earth, than live at ease with you, with that she would have left him, but he commanded his Servants by force to take her into the Coach, and to go along with him into Arabia, not letting any know what she was, but Selia.

When Constantia saw that of force she must needs go, she uttered such complaints, and made such sorrowful exclamations, that those that guarded her, thought she would have fallen mad ; though they neither knew her, nor her cause of sorrow ; yet, in their hearts they pittied her.

To whom we will leave fully possessed with the uttermost extremity of anguish, onwards towards Arabia, the place she most of all hated, to speak of Pericles ; who in a mad fury, having ran up and down a long time in the Wood, returned again to the Shepherds house, to see if Constantia were not yet come ; but there he found only the Shepherd and his Wife in great care, waiting his return, who spying the sword in his hand, and his face and hands in many places bloody, which was with the scratches he had received in the dark Wood, were ready to fly from him for fear ; but he mildly demanded if Constantia were come back : who told him they saw her not. Alas ! (quoth he) poor Lady, I fear she is devour'd by some merciless Beast, for I found Pi-

for lying dead in the Wood, which affrighted me with such fear of her mishap, that I know not what to do, nor which way to go in her search.

Pyloos (said the Shepherd) I can assure you, there doth no Wild-beast haunt this Wood, for then could not my flocks feed in quiet, of which I have not lost one Lamb by any casualty; but rather I think my Lady missing you all the day, is gone so far into the Wood, that she cannot return, nor you find her, whom I do not doubt but to find in the morning; neither is he dead, but I believe hath tasted some of our unlucky Fruit, called Pyloos, that hath cast him into a dead sleep; and after that, he will be frantick for a space.

Pellicles was much comforted with the Shepherds Speeches, yet notwithstanding left him, and all that night wandered up and down the Wood to find her, but he spent his labour in vain, neither that night, nor the next day finding her; which drove him so far beyond the compass of Natural continency, that if he had remained long in that perplexity, it would have cut off his life. When he saw himself void of all hopes, without means how to find her, and assurance that she was not within the Wood, he sat himself down upon the earth, uttering these laments. How fortunate had I been, had I never set foot on Persian soil? Then had I been King of Assyria, and Constantia at quiet in her Fathers Court: Whereas now, both I, but especially her self, is fallen into extreame misery: Had it only fallen to my share, to have endured a thousand more misfortunes, I could with patience have endured them; only this tormenteth me, that my misfortune hath brought her from Wealth, to poore, from quiet, to discontent, from pleasure, to pain, from happiness, to misery, and from Life to Death. I cannot tell how to prevent these evils, to sit here and utter sad Words, availeth me not, to bewail her estate, helpeth me not, nor to destroy my self will benefit her: Should I sit here for ever, I should never find her, and to seek her out of this place, is to spend my labour without hope of any comfort; for I fear she is dead, and then may I sooner meet her Ghost in this place, than her body in another: Well, since neither comfort nor counsel is left to further my hopes, I will for ever dwell in this unfortunate place, and fill the same with my laments.

ments, neither shall my body rest in bed, nor my stomach taste of other food, than wild fruit, until I find my Love, or know the place of her abode.

Thus he lived in those Woods many days and years, making every Tree a Monument of Constantia's unfortunate loss, though he was often perswaded by Pisor, who afterwards travelled most part of those Countries in search of her, but could never hear of her. The Emperor her Father also had given over all care, as supposing her to be dead; greatly lamenting the misfortunes of Pericles, and marvelling at his absence, believing that he was murdered, according to the accusations made by Oretus, against Parenus and Thureus; whom we will leave for a while, to speak of the misfortunes that befel Constantia.

C H A P. VIII.

How *Selia* was Married to *Helion*, and of the miseries *Constantia* endured by her jealousy: How *Constantia* was delivered of a goodly Boy, whose life was preserved by the policy of *Palia*, and how *Selia* vexed thereat.

HElion was no sooner come to Arabia, but he was informed of his Fathers death, which for a time he lamented of common use, not of pity or affection; in the mean time causing Constantia to be kept in an Old Monastery, under the Government of an antient Lady, who lived not only by the gifts that the King bestowed upon her for many bad actions, but also of many Gentlemen that haunted the Company of the Kings Concubines by stealth. In this very place did he leave Constantia, neither her keeper, nor any other knowing what she was who by this time was resolved to endure all adversities; many days giving her self to quiet: Helion by reason of his dissembling mourning, he came not at her.

But the time being come, that he was Crowned King, he married *Selia*, causing Constantia, as one of her Hand-maids to attend her, which he did out of a malicious intent only to vex her; but she was well content to do any thing to be rid of his hateful love,

love, whom she abhorred from the very depth of her Soul. But when he saw she endured the same with such patience, he again caused her to be kept closely in the Monastery, giving order that none but Palia should come at her.

Thus did she continue until she began to feel her self with Child by Persicles, which drove her to the uttermost exigent of care, how to preserve the Infants life ; sometimes thinking to make her estate known to Palia ; but having sufficient tryal of her wicked disposition, durst not trust her, lest she should reveal the same to the King.

Selia also at that time was great with Child by Helion, both Conceiving at one instant, one in the Persian Court, the other in the Shepherds Cottage. Selia made Helion acquainted therewith, desiring that she might be delivered in some private place, that the Ladies of the Court might not know thereof, for it would be to her a great scandal.

Helion well knowing the nature of the people, and in what detestable sort they held adultery in their Queen, thought no place so fit as the Monastery where Constantia was, whether she was soon conveyed; report being given out by the Kings command, that she was for the preservation of her health, departed into the Country.

The Queen being come into the Monastery, asked for Constantia, who was presently brought before her, whom Selia now began to hate mortally, being jealous of her, supposing that her Husband still loved her ; whom she used so disdainfully, upbraiding her with many indecent speeches, which she took most patiently, with brinish tears, lamenting her misfortunes ; and so surly did she behave her self to all that attended on her, that they began to dislike her.

Palia seeing the pride of the Queen, and in what disdainful sort she used her, accusing her to be privy to the Kings secret love to Constantia, and using her so basely, and with such evil terms, began to hate her ; which Constantia perceived by some doubtful words she gave out against her ; whereupon finding a fit opportunity, when she was vexed with her unkindness, she came to Palia, and said, I perceive the Queen useth you unkindly, regarding to use none well, though they give her no cause at all, she likewise misuseth me, that never in my Life offended her, but

have been the greatest cause of her good, I would gladly intreat your aid, and withal, reveal many things unto you, that you yet knew not, if I were assured of your secrecie, which I am the moze fearful to reveal, because they are matters of great importance; but notwithstanding, if you will vouchsafe your assistance to pity my most miserable estate, you would do a deed of everlasting merit.

Palia hearing her speeches, said, if I may likewise without fear make my mind known unto you, be you assured that I do so mortally hate her, that rewards my good service with such disdain, that I will not leave any thing unattempted to vex and torment her: Therefore if any Oath may assure you of my secrecie, having no other means at this instant to give you proof thereof: I vow by all the Gods, that I never intend to reveal what you disclose to me, but will most faithfully endeavour to pleasure you to my utmost power. Then know (quoth Constantia) that I am Daughter to the Emperour of Persia, sometimes brought up in this Court, and your Queen but the Daughter of a Country Swain in Persia, that being exalted to Dignity, though basely born, becometh her self thus proudly. I fearing my Father would have married me to Helion against my will, having betrothed my self to the King of Assyria; with whom I stole from the Court, in this Apparell of Selia's, that is now your Queen; much enquiry was made for me, but they could never find me; for I lived with my Lord in this disguise in a Shepherds house, until one day I missing him, strayed so far from the house, that I could not return, so by misfortune was found by Helion; and thus I am now brought into this Country, either to my death, or a worse end: I am also big with Child, and within short space, look to be delivered; my earnest desire is, that you would use some means to preserve my Babe from death, which no doubt it is like to endure by her malice, and his cruelty.

Palia hearing her speeches, did comfort her with many chearful words, thereby to work some revenge against the Queen, pitying the distress of Constantia, of whose vertues she had before some knowledge: With this promise did Constantia somewhat comfort her self, hoping that in the end she should escape from that bondage, being daily cherished by old Palia, who behaved

her.

her self towards Selia with such duty and obedience, that notwithstanding her often upbraidings, she still kept her self in most place of credit about her.

Now the time was come that the Queen was delibered of a godly Boy, and Constantia the next night of another, none being privy thereto but Palia; who handling the matter with such cunning, that she conveyed Constantia's child to Selia, and hers to Constantia, making her acquainted with her intent therein; and the next night told Helion, that the Damsel in her custody was delivered of a Boy. Helion hearing that, willed her to keep the same secret upon pain of Death, and not to reveal it to the Queen, vowing e're many days to destroy it, giving order to have his own Son named Petrus; and coming to his Queen, told her, it were best to be nursed in the Country, who was contented to be ruled by him. Then calling Palia to him, he told her that she must provide a Nurse for his Son; who having before plotted what she intended, said, she knew a kinswoman of hers, that was lately brought to bed some twenty miles off, to whom she would convey the Infant.

Helion was glad of her promise, appointing her all things necessary for her departure the next morning. Late in the night when Palia was sure none could see her, she went to Constantia, and told her what she intended, withal, asking her counsel, what she should do?

Aye me, said she, I know not in this extremity what to resolve upon, fearing never to see my Son again; and if thou goest, I lose my greatest comfort. Then taking the Child in her Arms, and bestowing many dear kisses thereon, she said, Palia, I pray thee let me know what thou intendest to do with it? Lady (quoth she) after I am departed this Court, I will not cease travelling till I arrive in Assyria, where I do not doubt but to find Pericles, unto whom I will declare your misfortunes. But if I find him not there, I will travel into Persia, to the place where you lost him, where I shall assuredly find him; so that he knowing your estate, may seek to release you. And wilt thou do this for me, said Constantia, that am never like to make thee amends? I will (quoth Palia) and with such faithfulness execute my charge, as shall procure you comfort.

Many speeches past between them befoze they parted; but yet in the end, she was constrained to leave her almost dead with grief, but afterwards somewhat comforted with the good hopes she had of her faithful dealing; of two evils, thinking it the best to commit the Babe to her courtesie, who by all likelyhood intended well thereto. Early the next morning she departed, having no body in her company, with all the haste she could, travelling towards Assyria.

Helion now began to meditate on Constantia's misfortune, and who should be the Father of the Child; and whereas befoze he determined to shut her up in a Cloyster, until she would yield to his desire, he now resolved to revenge the disdain she had shewed him for refusing his love: And finding occasion when none could interrupt his speeches, being alone with her, he said unto her in this manner.

Disdainful and unwoorthy Lady, did you esteeme so basely of my love, in my contempt to chuse some base boyn Deasant, to possess that which I so long sought with devoted affection; and refusing my honourable proffer, to chuse rather to become anothers Harlot: Who would ever have thought so to meely a person, shadowed with so fair a pretext, had inwardly nourished such ignoble affections? Do not you think that the Emperour your Father will rejoyce to hear, that his fair Daughter (which may well be termed incontinency) hath so vilely stained her Princely Blood, and defamed her Royal Stock, with so infamous a fact, or rather dye with grief?

Therefore to prevent so great a mischief as will come by his death, I will be the man to keep this action from his knowledge, and in his behalf work such punishment, as shall be agreeable unto so great an offence: yet let me know the cause of thy contempt against me, and who is the Father of thy Bastard, which if thou refuse to do by gentle means, I will by force compel thee thereunto.

Constantia with patience heard out his speeches, and then did make him this answer: Helion, I can well bear your opprobrious words, neither do I care how scandalous they are, for the Father of my Infant is as good as thy self, and one that I love far more than thy self, who censureth me according to the quality

of his own disposition. The reason why I left my Fathers Court, was to avoid your importunate suit, which was very displeasing to me, in respect of the honourable love I intyred: Therefore beware that you abuse not me; for though the Emperour my Father will not revenge my wrongs, yet there is a King as mighty as he, claimeth my possession, and will not suffer me to be wronged.

What, is a King the Father of that Bassard, said he? No, thou shalt never perswade me to that, for it looketh more liker a Fool than a King.

Yes, said she, and yet a King as wise as thy self, and that e're long thou shalt know; for the Father thereof is private to all thy actions, although thou thinkest me safely kept; and if thou dost murther it, I care not, for thy self will be the first that will repent the deed. And for me, use me well, for the Father of this Infant loves thee well, and yet thou wilt be thy own destruction in seeking his death.

Helion understood not the meaning, marvelling who it should be she meant, that he said, I think thou art mad, or counterfeittest some deceit by the ambiguity of thy speeches; for how can the Father of that bzat love me? or what cause have I to repent me of any thing I should do to it? which the rather shall suffer my wrath because of thy derisions; therefore resolve me, or be assured of my everlasting hatred.

I neither (quoth she) regard thee, nor thy hate, utterly denying to fulfil thy request in any respect; yet if thou hadst not demanded it, I should peradventure have told thee: Do the worst you can, I care not, for misery it self hath made me resolve to endure the greatest extremity; and know, that I do the more dislike the Babe, because it is so like thee, that hath not the least spark of honour or honesty. Ask me no more questions, for I will not answer thee, esteeming my self more fortunate in thy hatred, than in thy love; for the one is nothing but the disordered motion of a cowardly disposition, and the other the unconstant falshood of a shallow wit.

Helion was much vexed to see how lightly she esteemed him, was ready to tear his hair; he went raging and swearing from her, meditating which way how to work his revenge. Selia no-
ting

ting his dissemper by his pale countenance, asked him what had disquieted him : to whom he gave no answer at all, casting a scornful look toward her ; which she took in such suspicious sort, that she presently supposed he did it in scorn of her, and being puffed up with jealousy, could not refrain from tears, and at last she uttered these speeches.

My Lord, I now perceiue the love you protested to bear to me, is altered, and I, like a poore cast away, am like to liue in misery : & that I had liued still in my contented estate, then should I not haue been subject to these misfortunes : Constantia whom you told me you loved not ; it is she hath stolen away your affections, and on her you dote, despising me ; wherein you shew the unconstancy of your disposition ; besides she hath made known what I was, which makes me be scorned by the Ladies of the Court, so that the misery I am like to endure, is intollerable.

Do not, said he, disquiet your self with the least suspicion of any such alteration in me, for I vow to love none but your self : the cause of my variation is, how to revenge my self on her that even now hath abused me with opprobrious terms ; she is brought to bed of a Bastard, begotten of a base boyn Peasant, which shall not liue long to ver me : I wish I had left her in Persia, to haue been deuoured by wild Beasts, rather than by pitying her, to worke my self this disquiet. Should I send word to her Father the Emperoꝛ, he would compel me to marry her, or else he would make War against me : Or if I should seek her death, it would by some means or other come to his ear, and then he would seek revenge against me, so that I know not what way to be rid of her.

The Queen hearing him say she had a Bastard, presently began to suspect it to be his, and would then haue uttered it, but fear, and premeditated hope of revenge against Constantia, stopped her, thinking first to learn the truth, before she would offend him ; perceiuing his inconstant disposition to be such, that the least thing altered his love, deferring her self till her month was ended, by which means Constantia rested void of disturbance.

The flame of jealousy burned so in Selia's Breast, that as soon as she had forsaken the Monastery, and had a while with great kindness, behaved her self to all the Lords and Ladies in most estimation

estimation, thereby to insinuate into their good opinion; she came to Constantia, fawning upon her with an affable Countenance, using many courteous speeches towards her, with intent to list out the truth of her suspicion.

Helion hearing that she was in the Monastery, fearing that she would have done some violence to Constantia, followed her: Selia seeing him there, was half astonished, thinking that he had not known thereof, and now suspected of a truth that he came to visit Constantia of love, and not to seek her, again burst forth into tears; whereupon he took occasion to say thus, Selia, I perceive suspicion is the cause of your disquiet, therefore, to shew what little cause you have to use me so; do but say what I shall do to this dishonourable Lady, and it shall be performed. Constantia then began to fear some mischief was near her, which might easily have been seen by the oft changing of her Countenance; whereupon she made this reply, Helion, if thy Queen knew how much I disdain thee, such motions of disquiet would not trouble her; for I condemn thy dispositions, which art ready to alter with every blast of wind: O Selia, dost thou think my heart will stoop to his base lust, or become Concubine to so degenerate a wretch as thy Husband is: no, I will rather see my Body torn in pieces, and suffer the cruellest misery in the World: He threatneth me with terrible speeches, but his Cowards heart is not of Courage to execute his detested Will. Therefore, thou art of a heavy disposition, and comest to encourage him to do mischief; do the worst you can both, for I fear you not, but would gladly be rid of this miserable life: And rid thou shalt soon be (said Selia) notwithstanding thy dissimulation, thinking with disdainful speeches to colour thy wickedness. I am indeed come to be revenged on thee, that crodest my intent, and first shall that Bastard feel the smart of my wrath. Then snatching the Child out of the Cradle where it lay, she held it by the Heels ready to deprive it of Life, till Helion with-held her: Then Constantia said, Nay, let her murder it, and she will be the first that will repent it; but first view it well, and see if it resembles not the Father that standeth by: I assure thee it is his, and that thou shalt soon know. Out upon thee (said he) I desire thee, with that she:

She viewed it well, and perceived that it resembled him perfectly whereupon she cast the Child upon the ground, saying : Did you bring me hither to do me this intollerable wrong : Shall I suffer my self to be thus used, and live to endure perpetual discontent : the Pærs of this Land shall understand the wrong I sustain, and none else, my own hands shall work revenge : Constantia then said, Selia, take up the Infant, and cherish it, for it is thy own ; my Child by this time, is conveyed far enough from thy power by Palia ; who pitying my distress, and scorning to be subject to thy base pride, hath changed one for the other, leaving yours with me, carrying mine unto the King of Assyria, who is the Father thereof ; who I doubt not, will soon revenge the wrong that is done to me ; neither do thou jealously suspect me, for that degenerate King, thy Husband ; for she that is Daughter to the Emperoz of Persia, scorneth to be thy Cozribal : If I had dealt unfaithfully with him, then he might worthily have inflicted this punishment upon me : But his own Conscience knows, I always refused to love him, my love being before vowed to the King of Assyria.

Both of them were amazed at her speeches, the Queen in all haste, taking up her Son that lay sprawling at her feet almost dead ; and Helion after a long study, said, Constantia, I perceive thou knowest not, how unable the King of Assyria is to redeem thee from hence ; being lately dispossessed of his Crown by the King of Armenia, and by the Treason of his own Subjects, being himself driven to live in obscurity ; therefore this will I do, in satisfaction of my mind against thee ; thou shalt never depart from hence, but in this Cloyster end thy life, unless the valiantest knight in the World redeem thee ; for such a Guard will I put over thee, as shall be overcome by none.

Constantia was no whit grieved to hear the doom of her imprisonment, but only the suspect she had of his words of Persicles, overcame her heart in such fear, that she fell down in a deadly Trance ; those that were about her, having much ado to recover her ; whereupon they left her, Helion giving command, that most diligent search should be made for Palia, through the whole Country of Arabia.

C H A P. IX.

How *Helion* built an Enchanted Tower, to put *Constantia* therein, and how he was imprisoned therein himself in great misery, by the Enchantress *Ila*.

In few days after, *Helion* purposing to effect that which he now'd (being resolved to work the most cruellest revenge that might be on the Lady *Constantia*) called all the cunningest workmen of his Land before him, asking their advice about building of a Castle of invincible strength, which they promised to perform; and thus they began to work. First, situating the same upon a Rocky Hill of great largeness, that was encompassed with a deep Lake, and encompassing the Circuit of the ground, with a Wall framed of the hardest Marble, of such smoothness without, and height, that it was not to be ascended: Over the Lake was framed a bridge of exceeding beauty, placing at the entrance, two Fortifications between them, setting a gate of Brass, curiously wrought with carv'd Images of Lyons, being the Arms of Arabia: On the midst, they placed a Drawbridge, drawn upon such devices, that one man was able to draw up the same with speed: At the farther end of the Bridge, was builded a most curious wrought Gate, garnished with stones of strange and sundry colours; the entrance thereto was another Gate of Brass, far exceeding the first: In the midst above the top thereof, was placed the form of six Golden Lyons of great bigness; within this Porch was a large Court, encompassed round with Towers, Walls and Fortifications, within the compass whereof, an Army of Soldiers might lye Encamped.

The next entrance, was three Gates of Brass, carved like the other two, over which, they built a Tower of great beauty, and workmanship, framed of Adamant, cut out, and carved into the forms of several Beasts, Trees, Herbs and Fowls, the beauty whereof would have held the beholder in admiration: On the top was built four Pinacles on a Quadrant, whose glittering Plates and carved work shined against the Sun, as if the same

had been framed of beaten Gold : Within the Tower was a Court, encompassed round about with most rich and stately buildings, having several doors into every building, of invincible strength, framed all of one proportion, gilded over with Gold ; the Windows of an exceeding largeness and beauty, supported by two Lyons of carved Alabaster, gilded over with Gold ; on the top next to the Eves, two Cherubs standing in form of Angels, of carved Gold, supporting the Picture of a beautiful Lady ; the Windows discovering the richness of the Chambers within : In the midst of this Court, was framed a clear Fountain, with divers streams of water springing from the same, curiously carved and gilded over with Gold ; the brightness glittering with such reflection of the Sun beams round about, that at the first entrance it would have dazzled the beholders eyes. At the further end of this Court, was a Hall of exceeding largeness, supported within with Pillars of Jeat, beset with stones of sundry colours ; the Screen being framed of the most curious work of carved Wood, the Roof of Stone, whereon were coloured out the colours of all kind of Fruits ; the Walls hung with rich hangings of Arras, containing the History of the Wars of Troy ; In the midst of this Hall was fastned two Pillars, whereunto were chained two Lyons of huge bigness, and great strength, denying all farther entrance ; the further end of the Hall was without any Wall at all, supported by Pillars of the same Jeat, lying open in a Garden of great largeness, which at the first entrance into the Hall was gloriously discerned, in which were made Walls, Arbors, Borders of Flowers, and the form of all things cut out in Herbs, Flowers to delight the eye, please the smell, of several forms, and all things so curiously wrought, as was strange to behold. In the midst of this Garden stood a Banquetting house of round proportion, the foundation supported by four Lyons of carved blew stone, called Ayres ; the Windows round about encompassed the same, through which the Light passed clearly without impediment : The Pillars, Casements, and other proportions of such excellent workmanship, that it seemed to be altogether framed of Christial. On the top of this House, stood the form of an Angel, framed of beaten Gold, pointing with his finger towards the other Lodgings, of very rich building ;

building; at the farther end of the Garden, the Description thereof is hereafter set down.

Hekon having finished this work, called unto him one Penthrasus, an ancient Professor of Negromancy, and with him alone went into the Palace, shewing him the same, and why he had built it; desiring his counsel and aid to the performance of his will.

Penthrasus being desirous to practise his Art, which before he durst not do (for by the Laws of the Land, the same was punished with death) promised by his Art, to make the same so invincible, that it should never be overcome by strength or policy; advising the King to bring Constantia thither, and two Damsels to attend her, and attire her in Rich Ornaments. When the King had performed this, and delivered her to Penthrasus, making a condition with him, that none but himself should be suffered to have entrance, he departed, leaving Constantia to be entertained by Penthrasus; who led her into the Castle, appointing her Damsels where they should have all things necessary, telling her it would be many years before she could be released: After he had placed her there, he began to cast about how to fortifie the same; and by his Art, he found that there lived in the Desert of Arabia, two mighty Giants, of huge proportion, and of great strength; whom he found out; casting such bewitched Charms upon them, that they presently followed him to the Castle; (which he afterwards named Penthrasus's Palace) by his Charms and Spells, binding them to keep the first entrance of the Bridge, and by his Sorceries guarding every entrance in such strong sort, as it was impossible to be overcome. Having performed every thing according to his mind, he brought thither his Wife, named Ila, determining to spend the rest of his life there; but within few years he fell sick, and by his art, found the date of his life to be near: Whereupon he went to the Oracle of the Hesperian Pyriphs in the Desert, which he was enjoined unto by a Vision he saw in his sleep, to know what he should do concerning those Charms which he had set upon the Castle, whose Answer was this.

Penthrasus, Because by thy Art thou hast not attempted any wicked action, and to disclose the *Destinies*; many a Knight of sundry

sundry *strange Countries* shall hear of the beauty of *Constantia*, and shall come to try their Adventures, to set her at Liberty; but none shall perform it; neither will it be revealed that she is the Daughter of the Emperor of *Persia*, until she be released by the Valour of her own Son; and the manner and means how, is as yet hidden and unrevealed, until which time, *Ila* will live: and by our directions govern the Castle until the Enchantments be ended. He received this answer, he returned home, and within few days dyed.

Thus was *Constantia* enclosed, enjoying all the delights her heart could desire; but nothing could comfort her, but the remembrance of her Lord *Pericles*, for whose absence she lived in continual grief.

Helion kept that which he had done concerning *Constantia*, from the knowledge of *Selia*, determining never to see her again; within short time after, such discord began between he and she, that the whole Court was in an uprore, and he found such discord with her, that then he began to hate her, abandon her company, and to dote on the remembrance of *Constantia*; repenting him of the evil he had done her, and resolved again to set her at liberty, or else to obtain of *Penthrasus*, to live for ever in the Castle, and by extraordinary means to obtain her love; and upon a time, he rode thither, determining to see her, where when he came, he found the Gate at the entrance of the Bridge, fast shut, and nothing but a horn hanging thereat, fastned to a Chain, which he winded, and presently one of the Gyants came to the door; with whose sight he stood affrighted, till he asked him what he would have? I would, said he, speak with *Penthrasus*. The Gyant bid him come in, and shutting fast the entrance, brought him before *Ila*, who presently knowing him, said, Understand the cause of your coming, which thou shalt never obtain, for which disloyal thought, and other ignoble deeds, thou shalt never depart from hence, until the Lady, which thou didst cause to be enclosed here, be set at liberty; with that, not suffering him to answer, she caused him to be bound, and carried into a dark Dungeon, where he was hardly dieted, and worse threatened.

Ila having him in her custody, knew that none else was privy to *Constantia's* being there, caused these Verses to be written

in Letters of Gold, and did hang them over the outermost Gate, and by the same, Constantia's Picture, whereon she cast such a Spell, that all that beheld it, were in love with her. The Verses were these,

Within this Castle is inclos'd
the Daughter of a King,
Whose Beauty caus'd a Traytor's fall,
that did her from her Country bring.
Here must she bide until a Knight
by force doth set her free,
And by his valour end the date
of crooked Destiny.
The World shall fame him for that deed,
and great shall be his Fame ;
Her lasting Love he shall enjoy,
that rids her out of pain.

When she had written these Verses, and plac'd them under the Picture, she withdrew her self into the Castle, staying the coming of the next Knight for the adventure.

C H A P. X.

How *Palia* seeking for Food, was devoured by a Lyon : And how the Infant was found by a Lady, who cherish'd him, and afterwards named him *Montelion*.

LET us now return to speak of *Palia*, and what happened to the Infant. After she had travelled out of Arabia, resolving faithfully to do what she had undertaken, and had attained to Assyria, she soon understood the news of the Armenians' Victory, whereby she was assured it would be in vain to seek *Persicles* there : Wherefore she turned towards Persia, intending to follow Constantia's directions to find him ; but being weary'd with long travelling, she sat her self down upon a Mountain, standing in a vast desolate place, on the top whereof grew a tuft
of

of Trees, that shadowed her from the heat of the Sun ; where she had not long rested, but the boy fell asleep ; and she being very hungry, began to seek for Fruit, (being no other food there to be had) leaving him upon the mountain ; But wandering into a Thicket, was by mis-fortune, devoured by a Lyon, and the poor Infant left ready to be destroyed ; but the Destinies that had allotted him to better fortune, preserved him.

Not far off there, dwelt an Antient Knight, named Cothanes, who with his Lady the same day, had been a hunting ; and now she being weary of the sport, with two servants in her company, happened to alight at the very place where the Babe lay, who by that time was awaked, and missing his Nurse, began to cry.

The Lady hearing the noise, searched among the Trees, and presently found the Child, which she took in her arms, commanding one of her Servants to take up a bundle of Cloaths that lay by the same, and to wind his Horn, that Cothanes hearing it might come unto them ; who according unto her desire came, asking her what was the matter : You have, said she, all this day hunted after wild Beasts, and lost your labour ; but I have found a rich prize, yet by what mis-fortune left in this place, I know not. With that they both viewed the Child, with noting his exceeding beauty and sweet countenance, with great joy, carrying it home, naming it Montelion : finding in the Fardal, many rich Jewels, and a fair embroidered Scarf, whereby they knew him to be of no mean Birth, Educating him chearfully, and after he was come to knowledge, teaching him many commendable and virtuous qualities. When he came to fourteen years of age, Cothanes taught him how to ride, and mannage a horse, often taking him forth a hunting with him, delighting much in his forwardness, wherein he was so apt, that he could not offer to teach him any thing, but he soon grew to be as perfect as himself. Whom we will leave to be Educated by Cothanes, and return to speak of Pericles, and what befel to him, after the loss of Constantia.

CHAP. XI.

How *Pisor* being recovered, perswaded *Persicles* to crave aid of the Emperor of *Persia* against his Enemies : And how he obtained the same, and carried a mighty Host into *Assyria*, which was there overthrown.

WHEN *Persicles* had in his heavyness and sorrow, wandered up and down these woods, the space of three months, and *Pisor* again coming to his remembrance, upon a time they both met, *Pisor* saluting him with great reverence. *Persicles* seeing he was again come to his right senses, asked him what became of *Constantia* : My Lord, said he, I found her in the Shepherds House, and told her you would presently return ; but when she saw you stay so long, unawares to me, she went out of the Cottage to seek you, and I soon missing her, thought to overtake her, and direct her to the place where I left you ; but my misfortune tasted of that Dmious fruit. When said he, she is assuredly devoured by Wild Beasts, and I shall never see her again, my misfortunes exceed the Bounds of common miseries ; would I had ended my life, when I was first born, then would not both *Assyria* and *Persia* have such cause of discontent.

My Lord, (quoth *Pisor*) I cannot be perswaded that she is dead ; but by some misfortune, wandered out of knowledge, or carryed hence by some unexpected means ; therefore, I beseech you, bear her loss with patience, and in the end, I doubt not, but you will hear of her safety. Thou givest me words full of comfort (said he) but thou hast no ground for them, nor can I tell how by them to add any hope to my wretched passions, for that she is lost, I am sure, or that I shall never see her again I think it is impossible, being given to so hard an exigent of extremity, that I neither know what to do, nor whose aid to implore ; thou seest another hath shut me out of my Kingdom, and in my absence won my subjects hearts from me. The Emperoz of *Persia* hearing of the wrong I have done him, will be my enemy, and then there is no place of refuge left for me, but in this place, best befitting my misery. Yet my Lord (quoth *Pisor*) if I may be so bold as to counsel

counsel you, let us go to the Persian Court, I, as I am, and you in that disguise ; for none but your Sister being privy to your escape with Constantia, you may safely without fear, go thither, both to confer with Piera, and to crave the Persians assistance, to establish you in your Kingdom.

Pericles was unwilling to leave those Woods, where he was resolved to dwell for ever ; but finding no hope thereby to recover her, and also being perswaded by Pisor, he condescended to go with him. When they approached near the Court, Pisor rode on before, and entering the same, he soon found Piera, declaring to her, the misfortunes that was befallen to Pericles and Constantia ; and that he was without the Court, staying until he returned, to know whether with safety he might come to speak with her or no. Piera did then presently send for him by Pisor, who brought him into the Court, where he was welcomed by her with great joy ; with whom he continued some time in private conference : She counselled him to discover himself to the Emperour of Persia, and to crave his aid against the Armenians, who would readily assist him ; whereof she told him, he needed not to doubt, for that he had always been his friend, and knew not of his escape with the Princess, which none but her self and Dela were privy to.

Whilst they continued in this conference, Deloratus came in, and seeing one in such habit with his Wife, did marvel who it should be : Piera espying him, left her Brother, and went to her Husband, telling him who it was ; wherewith he ran to Pericles, and embraced him in his Arms, now perfectly remembering him, although grief had much altered him. After many speeches past, Deloratus he, and Piera, went to the Emperour of Persia ; who knowing him, welcomed him with exceeding kindness. Pericles then unfolded his misfortunes, and desired his assistance, to revenge the wrong the Armenians had done him ; whereupon the Emperour gave authority to Deloratus, to muster up Soldiers, and make provision for a speedy March.

This news was soon rumoured in the Court, and many thousand Knights prepared to aid Pericles, whom they honoured for his valour and constancy, purposing to spend their lives in his defence, that of a sudden one part of the Country was up in Arms,
and

and were conducted into Assyria by Deloratus, Persicles, Osinus, Pisor, and other Knights of great valour; of whose Deeds in Chivalry we will hereafter speak.

Persicles had such ill success, that after he had continued a long time in Assyria, yet he so little prevailed, that he was compelled to fly back into Persia to renew his Forces. These cruel Wars continued many years, the King of Armenia defending himself, and keeping full possession of his Crown, notwithstanding the Persians Forces.

Deloratus perceiving that the long continuance of these wars had wasted a great number of Soldiers, and still the King was as far from possession of his Right, as at the first beginning, determined to give order, and therefore assembled together the chiefest Rulers of the Host to know their opinion, what further to resolve on, who with a general consent persuaded him once again to renew his Forces, and if they did not prevail, never more to give the Onset.

CHAP. XII.

How Persicles Army was renewed, and how Montelion being denied by his supposed Father stole to the Camp, where he preserved the Kings Life, and how Cothanes knew him, and discovered his Birth, and how he received Knighthood at the Kings hand.

Persicles seeing Deloratus ready to shrink from him, being himself wearied with that tedious War, went with full resolution either to end his life, or ever after to abandon the company of all men, and end his days in solitariness. Deloratus therefore sent Messengers into Persia to muster up new Forces, who in short time returned answer, that the Persian Camp was full fourscore thousand strong: Amongst the rest it fortune'd, Cothanes (being in his Youth a Man of great Valour, and now being grown in years, and of exceeding good experience) determined not to give his mind to sloath, being much grieved to hear, what a number of his Country-men were daily slain: And therefore told his Lady what he intended, but she

with tears, and many entreaties dissuaded him, but all could not prevail, his heart was so fully set thereon.

Montelion now being grown to mans estate, hearing thereof, intreated Cothanes (whom he esteemed to be his Father, and so called him) that he might go with him; but he would by no means consent thereunto, the rather because his Lady most earnestly entreated him, that if he did go, not to leave her comfortless by taking Montelion with him; wherefore all his entreaties prevailed nothing, but of necessity he was enforced to stay.

Cothanes being departed, Montelion continued some days very pensive, being so much grieved in his thoughts to be left behind, that he refused his meat; and not withstanding the many kindneses his supposed Father used to him, he thought all things troublesome; which desire so much prevailed with him, that furnishing himself with good store of money, one night conveyed his Horse forth, and when all thought he had been in his Chamber, he was departed.

By that time it was day, he approached near the City of Holocons, wherein he stayed some three days, until he had furnished himself with Armour, which he caused a workman to frame of exceeding good Lydian Steel: His Armour being interset with forms of divers Trees, and Beasts of purest Gold, in his shield bearing this Device; A naked Man amongst a Trove of Trees; the which he caused to be made on purpose to be known, different from the rest.

Having furnished himself in this sort, he left the City, and journeyed towards the Persian Camp in Assyria, where he was no sooner come, but he beheld both the Battels joyned into a most terrible fight; and a great number of Souldiers on both sides slain, lying covered and besmeared with blood; some with their Swords grasped fast in their hands threatening; and others with a hideous noise breathing forth their last Gasps; and in the Camp he beheld some flying, others pursuing; some standing fast in cruel conflict, others with fierce ferroz slaying those that were next them, some with hideous noise animating their fellow Souldiers, and others with fear, crying, Retire, Retire: Where he beheld both Persians and Armenians intermingled, each slaughtering other; wherewith he stood a while amazed, having

never

never before beheld such cruel conflicts. At last he beheld a most gallant man with his sword drawn all covered with blood, hur-ling up and down amongst the Armenians, performing admirable deeds of Chivalry, till at last he was encompassed with such a multitude of his enemies, that it was impossible for him to escape, which sight stirred up in Montelion such sparks of courage, and desire to succour him, that his heart urging him to more forwardness than his Steed could perform, and yet his Steed with furious pace running as swift as might be, rushed in amongst the thickest of them. At first he pierced his Lance through the Bodies of two that were opposite before him, and his Horse with unflinching course overthrew others, treating them under his feet, then drawing his sword, whose sight dazzled the beholders, till he darkned the same with their blood, destroying such as withstood his passage, till he approached the Persian Knight, who without his approach had there ended his life: but finding himself at more liberty by the assistance of this new come Gallant, again redoubled his abated courage, and joining themselves both together, they performed such deeds of Chivalry, as by their assistance, the thronged multitude of the Armenians, was dispersed, every one hasting to get from them.

This Knight which Montelion had rescued, was Perciles, who seeing how valiantly this new come Gallant had preserved his life, said, Noble Knight, thy Valour hath preserved me, for which I will not be ungrateful; and if thou art a friend to me, as thou hast already shewn, second me and I will once again try my Fortune; with that Montelion held up his hand, to shew he gave consent. Perciles with all speed hasted into the foremost of the Battel, and Montelion followed after, making such way, that those that stood to resist him dyed; where being come, they found Deloratus, Osimus, Pisor, Cothanes, and many gallant Knights in Combat, beset with odds; but that disadvantage was soon turned to advantage by their approach, for there did Montelion perform such mighty Deeds of Arms, as made both the Persian and Armenian Hosts admire who he was, and from whence he came.

Not that the Persians began to gather new courage, and assault their enemies more fiercely than they had done since they began.

Palian the Usurper of the Croton seeing that, thinking to prevail as in times past he had done, called the chiefest Rulers to him, exhorting them to take courage to resist the Enemies; upon which with undaunted Spirits, they followed the Battel with great eagerness, that the Persian Commanders were forced to fly to their Regiments to encourage them to fight. All this time Montelion and Persicles kept together, making thousands of the Armenians to pay their lives for Tribute unto their Conquering Swords. Whilst they continued the fight in the forefront of the Battel, they suddenly heard a cry on the out-side; which when Montelion heard (not regarding to be counselled) he set Spurs to his Horse and rode thither, where he found Deloratus among a great throng of Armenians unhorsed, and fighting on foot being grievously wounded, and against such odds, that he was ready to faint, amongst whom he rushed with such fury, that he horsed him again, and sent a Guard with him to his Tent; then turning again towards Persicles, he espied Coehanes unhorsed, whom he knew by his Armour, and newly by force taken Prisoner, but before they could convey him from thence, he began so cruel a fight, that with the loss of many of their lives, he set them at liberty.

The Armenians seeing their Fellows thus slaughtered, and the Enemy pursue them so closely, began to retire, and Palian well perceiving that he should lose that day, therefore calling to him two Knights, one named Althesus, and the other Petron, who were the stoutest men in all his Army, he said unto them: Joyn with me, and let us once again expel these faint-hearted Cowards, with that, they three with a multitude of their chiefest Souldiers kept a head together, and fronted that Battel where the King himself fought, Palian knowing him, with a Lance ready touched ran at him, which lighted upon his shield, and so burst in pieces, not once bruising the well-tempered steel; Then Althesus and the rest assailed him all at once; whom he resisted with such exceeding valour, continuing a sharp combat with them a long time; but at length the odds proving too great, he was driven only to defend their swift blows that they made at him, and then he began to wish for the strange Knight that had before succoured him, expecting nothing but Death.

By this time Montelion had rescued Corhanes, and again got him Horse and Arms, which done he left him, and even at the very time the King wished for him, he came; and espying three Knights assailing him at once, he aimed his Swords point at Petrons breast who was next him, and running at him with all the force his Horse could possibly make, thrust him quite through his body, and presently after, aiming the same at Palian, he ran it at him; and had he not avoided his encounter, he had either slain or wounded him, but missing him, he made at him with his Sword with such puissant force, that in short space he gave him many wounds.

King Persicles having none but Alchesus to resist, did combat him bravely, who with the like valour resisted him; but in the end, the usurping King finding him so over-matched, would have often escaped, which Montelion perceiving, gave him no respite to fly.

Now the sight was most terrible to behold, the Persians comforted by the only valour of Montelion, running upon their enemies with irresistible fury.

The Armenians seeing one of their chiefest Champions slain, and their General retire, were amazed, and rather ready to fly than stand; which animated their fors with courage to pursue them as long as the day lasted. Montelion still pursued Palian, in whose rescue many of his Knights interfere themselves, and dyed by his Sword; and notwithstanding though he withdrew himself, yet Montelion followed him so near, that he often put him in danger of his life, until he was so far past in amongst their Troops, that he was compelled with his Sword to make his way out, in whose retire many dyed.

The night drawing nigh, whilst the Armenians sounded a retreat, Montelion had time to consider what was best for him to do, and whether it were convenient to discover himself or no: at last determining to depart in secret, he espied the King hard by him, who of purpose had watched him, doubting that which he intended, who came unto him, and said:

Sir Knight, the kindness I have found in you, imboldeneth me to desire your company, and entreat you to accept of my Tent to repose your self in; for that I suppose you are a stranger, and it were

were inconvenient for you to journey after so great a labour, having this day defended me, that I count my self yours, and my life preserved by your valour; therefore deny me not, but let me requite your kindness.

Montelion having heard Cothanes oftentimes commend the King for valor and courtesie, and knowing how to behave himself as well to the meanest as to the greatest (being by Cothanes nobly educated, and of his own inclination more apt to conceive, than they were to instruct) knowing him to be the King, said: Most honored King, I am unfit to receive the Honour you proffer me, and my deserts not worthy the commendations you give them; therefore I beseech you not to attribute to me more than is befitting my mean estate, but rather License me to attend on you with all humble duty, my life and all my endeavours being vowed to be spent in your service, and my self ready at your disposition. This said, they went together to the Camp, where they were welcomed with shouts and rejoicings of all the Persian Souldiers.

Deloratus hearing the applaud, came forth of his Tent to see what was the cause thereof, and espying the King and the strange Knight together, came unto them, and they both alighted to salute him, but Deloratus would by no means suffer them to depart, but intreated them to lodge in his Tent that night, which they did not deny: Then taking Montelion in kind sort between them, entered the Tent, where he unarmed himself.

When they beheld his youth, they wondered greatly thereat, to be accompanied with such valour, both Deloratus and Persicles, using him with great kindness: Presently after the principal Commanders of the Camp assembled themselves together to their Generals Tent, to receive Orders; amongst the rest was Cothanes, who at the first entrance into the Tent, espyed his Son Montelion (his head being only unarmed) and by his Armour knew it was he that had so honourably preserved his life, he could not refrain from rejoicing: Likewise Montelion seeing him, upon his knee entreated him to pardon his boldness for coming to the Camp without his consent. Cothanes took him up and embraced him, which the King seeing, said unto Cothanes, my Friend, is this thy Son? My Lord (said he) he is my Son, and

and he calleth me Father, and yet I am unworthy to be Father of such a Son, who hath rather shewed himself the Son of some Heroick King, and because his worthiness shall not be darkned with the ignoble Title of my Son, I will declare to you all that I know of him, indeed he is not my Son; but my Lady and I being one day a hunting, found him upon the Top of a Mount in Swadling cloaths, which was such as shewed he was not of mean Parentage, but of Honourable Race; his Purse as I suppose being distressed for want of Food, was wandzed from him, whose Carcass and Cloaths we found not far off destroyed by a Lion, since which time we have with carefulness brought him up, esteeming him as our own Son; this my Lord in brief is the whole sum of what I know of him.

They all marvelled at his words, especially Montelion, who was struck into such a deep Meditation, that for a time he stood like one Metamorphosed. The King then taking him by the hand, said: Although I know not what Title to give you, yet born you cannot be of less than Noble Blood, as doth appear by the manifest tokens of your Heroick disposition, therefore remit the care of that till hereafter, and stay with us, who are comforted with your presence: My Lord, said he, were my desire more great than it is, yet the desire I have to do you service, would surmount the same, being intirely deboted to your worthyness, which no desire of reward, hope of praise, or worldly respect hath bred in me, but only the instinct of Nature, that hath effectually engraffed the same into my heart; therefore I humbly desire you to bestow on me the Honour of Knighthood, wherewith if I be Dignified by your vertuous hands, I shall remain both with you, and endeavour to deserve the same. Pericles highly esteeming him, and kindly embracing him, told him, he should that night be his Bed-fellow, and the next day have his desire. With many other Speeches they ended the night, every Ruler departing with carefulness to set the Watches.

C H A P. XIII.

How the *Armenians* Army with exceeding Loss was discomfited.

EArly the next morning, Deloratus, Persicles, Cothanes, and all the rest of the chief Commanders of the Persian Army were assembled, who gave order that every Battel should be placed in such sort, as if they expected a present assault, which being performed, Montelion was with great Triumph brought into the field, and by the King was invested with the honour of Knighthood, which when he received, the Souldiers gave an exceeding great shout.

The *Armenians* hearing so great a noise, could not judge what might be the cause thereof, some censuring one thing, and some another. Palao fretting exceedingly at the last days discomfiture, which went near his heart; so that in all the time of the war he had not endured the like, and calling unto him the chiefest Knights in his Camp, which were Althesus, Golgorn, Muralus, Lamdelion, Knights of honourable birth, great wisdom, and approved valour, uttering unto them his earnest desire of revenge, desiring them with all speed to counsel him, which way to suppress the Enemies courage, only revived with the strange Knights aid; amongst whom it was agreed to surprize them unawares in the midst of their joy, that with all speed they arrived their forces, and without the sound of either Drum or Fife, issued the City Gates.

Certain Persian Spies perceiving their intent, posted to the Camp, and certified the General thereof, who gave command that without making any kind of suspicion, they should continue in their mirth, so that thereby their Foes should be heartned to their own destruction. Montelion with a party of Horsemen departed out of the Camp a contrary way that the *Armenians* came, with an intent to get between them and the City, which afterwards came to good effect.

The *Armenians* thinking to make a sudden slaughter of them, and not at all suspecting their readiness to receive them, with careless

careless haste approached the Camp, running upon their Enemies, whom they found in such orderly sort ready to receive them, that in short time they wished themselves again within the City. To recite every particular of their conflict, with what terror the Battel continued, would dull my wits with confusion, therefore my Pen shall barely recite the admirable Deeds of the most stoutest of both Armies.

Pericles considering what just cause he had, and with what equity he might challenge his right, wrongfully detained by his usurping Foe, bent his Sword point with unrelenting fury, to the destruction of his enemies, pitying their deaths that dyed by his Sword, aiming the same rather at Palians heart, than against them that were by force constrained to hazard their dear lives, which when he had dyed in gore-blood, he met with Palian, and at the first encounter had surely bereft him of life, had not his Horse by great misfortune stumbled at a dead body that lay in the way, but yet his Sword by that mischance missing his right aim, ran it quite through his Steeds neck, and both fell, lying grovelling on the Ground, ready to be trodden to death. A Valiant Knight that was next at hand, rescued Palian, and mounted him on his own Horse, whereby he lost his own life; for Pericles struck him such a blow on the Head, that with the force thereof, his Armour yielding, some scales pierced his brain, that he dyed. The two Kings for a while continued fight together, Palian with every blow receiving a deep wound, inasmuch that he knew he must either retire, yield, or dye; but then came Golgron to his aid, who with him maintained fight against Pericles, who notwithstanding that odds, had near hand brought them both to destruction, had he not espied Deloratus and Cothanes in distress, who were assailed by six valiant Knights, two of them being Althefus and Lamdelion, unto whom he hasted, giving them succour by the death of the first he met.

Whilst the Battel was maintained in the Front by the chief Commanders of both the Armies, Montelion with his resolute followers, whose hearts were inspired with such courage to be Guarded by so valiant a Guide, was gotten behind them, and began such a Massacre, that multitudes on a sudden was destroyed by his approach, whose deeds of valour amazed their senses

ses with such fear, and abated their courage with such terror, that like a flock of fearful Sheep, espying the approach of a devouring Lyon, run with amazed fear from his paws, even so the Armenians fled from the destroying hand of Montelion, filling the Air with dismal cries, that the noise thereof daunted the hearts of the stoutest Armenians; Palian and Golgron then turned their backs, making thitherward to know the cause, Althesus and Lamdelion did the like, whilst Deloratus, Perficles, and the rest, made such havock amongst the common Soldiers, that had the fight continued long, all their Enemies had been destroyed.

Palian and Althesus met Montelion, not knowing him, but supposing that it was he that had made such slaughter amongst them the last day, both assailed him, who in his heart rejoiced, that he had met with two such Champions to make trial of his valour, continuing to brave a Combat between them both, as is not to be described.

By this time, the cry began on the other side with such a hideous noise, that Palian's heart was affrighted therewith, and defended himself, as if a slender Youth had encountered with a great Giant, and began to sound a Retreat, halting to the City with all speed; which could not be accounted a Retreat, but rather an absolute flight, for it was done with such haste, as if they had been all amazed.

The day being thus ended, (to the terror of one, and comfort of the other) the Persians retired as Victors, and the Armenians half mad with grief and despair within their Walls, not minding suddenly to issue out again. Perficles and Deloratus honouring Montelion with their kind embracings, and the Soldiers applauded their valour with great rejoicings, and every one (according to their present occasion) betook themselves to their Charges, spending the day more in joy and security than ever they had done.

CHAP. XIV.

How the *Armenians* sent to two Kings for more aid into *Armenia*, who were met, and one of them taken Prisoner, and of other accidents that befell.

Morning being come, Palian assembled his Counsel together, to determine what Order to take for his security, which it behoved him to do; for that all their Forces were utterly discouraged, and the Inhabitants seeing their Lawful King living, began to revolt, and denyed to aid him either with Men or Money, that he was constrained to keep himself within the City Walls, not suffering any to issue out, or daring indeed to do it, they were so strictly besieged by their Enemy. When they had well considered their estates, and the misery they were likely to fall into, concluded to send into *Armenia* to tell the King, which Althesus and one Mutellus, two Knights of great valour, undertook the next night to perform.

Moetclion being at his Tent, intending to repose himself, yet feeling no desire to sleep, called for The Chronicles of the Wars of *Antiochus* King of *Syria*, and spending some hours in reading that History, his Esquire being gone to bed, about the dead time of the night, he heard the neighing of a Horse as it seemed to him without the City, then reading, and again staying to listen, his mind being somewhat troubled, (being still in his Armour) he girded his Sword to his side, determining himself to walk the rounds, to see how diligent the Watch was kept; whom he found sleeping as soundly, as if they had been in their beds, marvelling much at their drowsiness, but much more at their carelessness; he went from place to place, not minding that night to sleep, but to watch for them all. He not long stayed, but he espied two in Armour, with hasty steps passing through the Camp on foot, whom he little suspected to be other than of his own company, thinking them to be some straglers, that seeing their fellows asleep, went to rob, following as closely as he could, he perceiving them to depart the Camp, marvelling thereat, and to draw nigh to them, intending to know what they were before

he departed. They perceiuing one to follow them, and hauing gotten without the Camp, purposed to lay hold on him, and force him to declare what the Persians intended, so turning back to him, Althesus offered to lay hands on him, Soft (quoth Montelion) let me first know what you are : We are enemies to thee (said Althesus) and therefore yield. Tell me (quoth he) your names : Althesus knowing himself to be of great valour, and little thinking he would have resisted them, told him his name was Althesus. When I desie thee, (said Montelion) for I am thy enemy, and will rather dye than yield to thee ; then Althesus drew forth his Sword, and struck at him, and Montelion did the like to defend himself, and afterwards he offended them so much, that both of them found much ado to save their own liues.

Althesus seeing his valour desired to know his name, which he told him ; which when he heard, and seeing Mutellus fallen, and faint with effusion of blood, he thus said :

Sir Knight, at this time I cannot stay to end the Combat, for by hazarding my Life, I shall endanger the liues of many ; Therefore adieu till more convenient time to meet again : With that he turned his back, and Montelion stropt to giue his Adversary breath, which reuiued Mutellus, but seeing Althesus gone, his Heart was ready to dye with Grief : He bid him be of good comfort, for his intent was, to use him honourably, and helping him up, led him to his Tent, and called up his own Esquire to attend upon him, and disarming him, he went presently to the Noble King Persicles.

The next day Montelion caused Mutellus to be carried before the General, where he declared the cause of their departure, which the King was glad to hear, that by his foreknowledge, he might preuent the intention of his Enemies, but most of all he highly commended Montelion for his Noble Act, which had not they been discovered, it might have brought the whole Camp into great distress, by this means every one growing into such admiration of his valour, that they esteemed him their only defence and safety, inso much that wheresoeuer he went, the eyes of multitudes followed him, being much delighted to behold him.

The Prisoner desired the King to appoint his Ransom, but he
com-

committed that to Montelion, who after he had honourably feasted him, sent him ransomless to the City, where he soon got entrance, and declared the misfortune that had befallen him, and Althesus, which turned their conceived hope of comfort into despair, and had overcome them with fear, had not some hopes of his escape revived them.

Many days they remained thus within the City, being so hardly besieged, that they were out of all hopes of getting any viuals, but were driven to content themselves with spare diet, scanting out every Souldier and Inhabitant their allowance; which they continued so long (expecting to hear from Armenia) but being frustrated, expected nothing but miserable famine, that caused them late in the night to assemble their old, weak, and impotent men, unable to fight, and all women and children, except some of great account, and turned them out of the City, to the number of sixteen thousand, whose distressed estate, the King pitied, causing them to have sufficient food, themselves building Cabbins to defend them from the weather.

Pericles seeing the miserable estate his own Country was in, and to what extremity the people were brought, and knowing that this Usurper was not able to endure, but that he and all those within the City were ready to be starved, by the advice and counsel of those that he most esteemed, he sent a Herald unto Palian with this Message.

That although he had unjustly usurped his Crowne, and many other ways done him great injuries, yet pitying the miserable estate he was like to bring the Citizens into by his Cruelty, he made him this proffer: That although he might work revenge by his death (whose Life was now at his mercy) he should without Interruption with all his Souldiers, have free liberty to depart out of *Assyria*.

The Herald with this Message went to the City, declaring the cause of his coming.

Palian hearing this Message, was puffed up with such Choller, that he returned this answer.

That what he held was his right by conquest, and that he would hold, scorning he should send any proffer to him that was well able to defend himself, as little regarding his courteous proffer

fer as his malice, wishing him not to stay long, lest his Fathers coming, might inflict a greater punishment on him than he could eschew. Pericles was much enraged with his disdainful reply, fearing indeed, that if the Kings forces were once come, it would be a great cause to lengthen out the Wars; which he earnestly desired might have an end, that he might travel in search of Constantia, for whom his heart endured much sorrow. Being thus disquieted in his thoughts, and desirous of ease to his restless passions, one day amongst many, that he passed over with pensiveness, he got him to a solitary place, and there in a sad silence, meditated upon his misfortune.

Montelion being troubled with remembrance of his unknown estate, chose the same place to utter his private griefs, wherein the King was already shrouded, and suddenly espying him, began to withdraw himself, but the King desiring him to stay, said: Worthy Knight, I perceive some inward care hath made you withdraw your self from me; but impart your discontent to me, if not, hear mine, for I have desired to declare mine to one on whose Fidelity I might repose my self; and you are the man I have elected, having had sufficient tryal of your courtesie and friendship, that without doubting, I dare commit my self to your secrecie, for your aid may (as heretofore it hath) preserve me. My Lord, (quoth he) I count my self only fortunate in your love, and my heart acknowledgeth everlasting duty to your Majesty, which bindeth me in all reverence to become your Vassal, being more ready to venture my life in your service, than you can imagine; therefore good my Lord, fear not to impose any task upon me, for in your employing me, I shall account my self blest and happy.

I thank thee good Friend, (said the King) and if ever Fortune favour me again, I will requite this Kindness, though now I am plunged in the depth of ill luck, being as you see, deprived of my Kingdom by the Rebellion of my own Subjects, and the Tyranny of the King of *Armenia*: The brief discourse whereof is this: My Father when he lived, matched my Sister *Piera* in Marriage to this worthy Knight *Deloratus*; sending me into *Persia* with him, who before my return dyed: whilst I was there I chanced to fix my eye on the Beauty of
Constantia,

Constantia, Daughter to the Emperoz of Persia, which by reason of my sudden departure I could not give her notice of, having no other comfort but my Sister Piera, to whom I told the secrets of my heart, departing with her promise of assistance. Whilst I went into Assyria to establish my Kingdom, Prince Helion of Arabia obtained the Emperors consent to marry her, which news my Sister sent me. I being much troubled therewith, after I had repulsed my old Enemy the King of Armenia, in a Battel, I left the Government of my Kingdom to two of my Nobles, & departed in the habit of a Palmot into Persia, where within a short space I used such means by my Sisters friendship, that I was in that habit without suspicion in her Chamber, and thereby had conference with Constantia, and attained her consent, nothing remaining but only means to escape, which afterwards we effected, and travelling together, till we came to a Shepherds house, where we were kindly welcome, contracting a solemn Marriage between our selves, because we durst not be known to the contrary, where we liv'd some days in quiet, in the mean time her Father caus'd diligent search to be made, and it was Pisors chance to find us, who kept our Counsel, and was by me sent into Assyria to fetch some of my own Knights, to attend me home, where he found my Subjects at strife, and the King of Armenia taking that opportunity, with a mighty hand of Souldiers, slew most of my Guard, they joining with him till he had seized my Crown. Pisor with this heavy news, returned to me, being unwilling to give me knowledge thereof, which overcame my Heart with such Grief, that seeking out a solitary place, I wandered so far that I could not return to the Shepherds house that night; she missing me, also came forth the Cottage to seek me, but directing her steps a contrary way, or meeting with some misfortune, I never heard of her since. Pisor he likewise went forth to seek us, and ignorantly tasted of an unhappy fruit, that infused a sleepiness upon him for the space of four and twenty hours, but yet in his and my most earnest search we could never find her, and I fear never shall, but if I could recover this evil done by my fors, I would then spend the rest of my life in her search. Having ended these speeches, his heart was so much overcome with Grief, that he had much ado to withhold his Eyes from tears.

Montelion

Montelion was oppress'd with no less grief than he whose heart felt more inward disquiet than a strangers could have done, in silent sadness, seeming to partake of his sorrows, but not able to counsel him which way to recruit them, that at last by reason the necessity of the time afforded little respice,, they were constrained to depart.

CHAP. XV.

How *Montelion* by a strange and dangerous accident, won the City, and took *Palias* Prisoner.

Montelion that night elected out of his own followers twenty knights, such as he esteemed most valiant, telling them he had a matter of great danger and secrecy to complot, which might be a means to establish the King in his Kingdom, if they would faithfully joyn with him, which they all vowed to accomplish, and follow him, though it were to their deaths. Arm you then (said he) in Armenian Armour, of which you have choice, and come to me at midnight.

The knights being all come according to the appointed time, he departed with them through the Camp to the City Gate, and there he knocked, but scarce so loud that the Porter could hear him, who coming to the Battlements, demanded who it was: I am (quoth he) Alkhesos and other Armenians, as thou mayest know by our Armour, and bring good News, therefore open the Gates, lest by delay we are betrayed, for we are pursued. The Porter being hasty to succour them, presently unbolted the Gates. Montelion was no sooner entred, but he slew the Porter, entring the Lodge, and fell upon the Watch that lay sleeping, killing most of them before they awaked. One of them submitting himself, said thus: I am an Assyrian, spare my life, and if you be friends of Persicles, I will direct you how to surprize the City, and take the Usurper.

In so doing (quoth he) thou shalt be honoured of the King, and purchase thy own liberty. After he had put the rest to the sword, the Assyrian directed them to the Palace, and by so secret a way, that he brought them even within the Compass of the Castle.

He, to the very top where the Guard was. Montelion then said thus to his followers : My Champions, let not fear now possess your hearts, but by this exploit win honour for ever ; and by the Assyrians directions, divided themselves into two parts, the one to the foremost entrance, and the other to a by-way. Montelion knocking at the door, one of the Guard opening the same, and presently he rushed in with his sword drawn, killing the first, and all that came within his compass. The Guardians were so amazed therewith, that they were confounded in their senses ; their courages for want of time to consider, abated, and their hands with fear and trembling, not able to draw their swords, and when they had drawn them, knew not who to resist, for Montelion and his knights were so like them in Armour, and so intermingled amongst them, that they knew them not from their own fellows, by which means Montelions knights (who by a private mark knew one another) made such a slaughter amongst them, that all the floor did swim with blood : Some made means to fly out at the back door ; but as they stepped out they met death, he that followed not knowing he that went before to be slain, and had they all come that way, they would one by one have been destroyed, that in the end, by Montelions valour, there was not one left alive.

This plot was performed with such expedition in the night time, that the rumour thereof came not to the hearing of any, so that within a short space and little labour, Montelion surprized Palian in his Bed, who seeing one in Armour besmeared with blood, and his sword drawn, starting up, asked what he was : I am thy Enemy (quoth Montelion) and friend to Pericles : Thou art a Villain and a Traytor (quoth Palian) and then he called to his Guard, crying out, Treason, Treason, I am betray'd, Help, help.

Thou cryest in vain (said Montelion) for there is none near to hear thee, for by this hand thy Guard are slain ; and thou shalt follow the same unto death, unless thou dost ask mercy, for my hands can hardly abstain from working revenge on the Traytors head, thou hast deserved to be punished with inextinguishable torments. Montelion had scarce made an end of his speeches, but he heard the echo of a great out-cry solicits his ears, the

occasion was this : After Montelion was departed his Tent, his Esquire following him, and seeing him enter the City with so few in his company, ran back with all speed, and told the King what he had seen, who fearing that rash attempt might endanger his life, and hearing that he had gotten entrance into the City : Armed himself, calling up Deloratus, Olimus, Pisor, Corhanes, and all the rest of his chief Commanders of his Army, with the chiefest of their Bands, to the number of twenty thousand, and marched to the City Gates, which they found wide open, and being entred, and by several companies dispersed into every corner of the streets, presently on every side, they gave an Alarum, which sounded so terrible in the ears of all the Armenians, that like men bereft of their senses, they ran up and down to their own destruction. There did Deloratus fill his hands with slaughter, and Pisor with cruelty revenge his with-holden liberty ; there did Corhanes and Olimus, with many thousands, colour pale Death with red, and there did the King Triumph over his Foes, his conquering sword working their deaths, that the City Channels ran with gore blood, and their hasty Steps intercepted by heaps of men that lay dead on the ground ; then began such an out-cry as would have frighted the senses of the most valiant. Old men hiding their heads in their houses, the Women with their Children, crying, wringing their hands, making great lamentation ; the Soldiers ready to kill one another, not knowing whom to offend, being ignorant of the beginning of this Tragedy.

The Counsellors, and such as sat in Seats of Justice, with all haste went to the Castle, wherein Palian was ; where at their first entrance they found what sad spectacles of horror and dread had already entred there, laying open passage to death ; Montelions Knights (though but few) soon laid hand on them, slaying those that resisted, and enclosing them that yielded within a strong Tower.

By this time Montelion had haled Palian forth his Chamber, and bound him Hand and Foot, enclosing him in a strong Jail, where many Malefactors were imprisoned, himself being his Jailor ; and having intelligence that the King was entred the City, he bent his Steps to find him out, by the way killing the

the Armenians, who took him to be one of their own Officers, by his Armour.

At last he came to the Abby, where the greatest part of the Enemy lay, in a large field, encompassed within the Wall, whereinto the King with three thousand Souldiers were before entred, making such a slaughter as would have grieved the heart of any beholder.

Montelion being alone, thought now or never to make tryal of his valour, though being on foot, yet rushing amongst the thickest of his Enemies, who seeing him in that Armour, thought he had been rather one of their Chief Commanders than a Foe, who frantick with the fright, slaughtered them, because they were slow to kill their Enemies, which when he perceived, he cryed unto them, Villains, Traytors, Cowards, why do you shun me? I am your Enemy, a Persian, and come to destroy you; notwithstanding his speeches, by reason they had no time to consider what to do, they still fled from him, not so much with the thoughts of what he was, as with fear to come near him, for none came within his compass but he dyed; so that where he fought Death triumphed, and by reason of their flight, his hasty blows were spent in vain.

The King and Deloratos being nigh, stood and beheld him with admiration, wondering who it was (that they thought) with such fury fought against himself, until he espyed them, by his speeches giving them notice who he was. Having found him they desired, they followed their Enemies with cruel destruction, the bright day disclosing the bloody act of that night, which appeared before them with such a grim Aspect, that it made terror seem terrible, and before many hours of the day were spent, the Armenians were utterly destroyed.

The King gave a strict Order for diligent search to be made through all the City, and if they found any Rebels to put them to the Sword, which done, he commanded the dead Carcasses to be carried in Carts out of the City, which were so many, as that they had much ado to perform it in a days time; when he had done this, he gave the spoil of the Enemies Tents and Houses unto the Persian Souldiers, and also gave Commandment that all the Women, Children, Old Men, and impotent People,

should be brought into the City, and every one possess his own House wherein he dwelled before: This being performed, and for that day order being taken for the wounded, the Soldiers enriched with spoil, the Citizens at quiet in their houses, diligent Watch set at each Gate, and a strong Guard within the Tents, with that it drew to night, and their labour required ease, after much joy, they betook themselves to their rest.

Early the next morning they forsook their Pavilions, and appointed certain Scouts to watch about the borders of the Country, for the approach of the King of Armenia, which they all supposed would be very shortly, for it was now two months since Alchelus departed.

By that time the day was aged the space of three hours, the Inhabitants of Assyria that had lived under the subjection of the Armenians, hearing of Palians overthrow, and being assured of Persicles's safety (which before they would not believe) came in multitudes to submit themselves unto their Lawful King, who rejoicing thereat, bid them in sign of their obedience, arm themselves, and return to their own houses, and destroy all the Armenians that inhabited the Land of Assyria, not suffering Man, Woman, or Child to live.

It was a wonder to behold with what greediness the multitudes bent themselves to their Enemies destruction, every one thinking to be foremost, and he that was last, thinking himself happy if he could grasp a Sword to seek his own liberty; which they effected within three days, that there was not any of the Armenians Progeny left.

If they had found an Assyrian woman married to an Armenian Man, both she and all her Children dyed; and if they found a woman with Child, or having any Children that she could not shew an Assyrian was the Father of them, they had all of them been slain.

In the mean while all those that were prisoners, were brought forth, Persicles by the consent of his Nobles, People, and Council, appointed them to dye (Palian excepted) who also had that day suffered a shameful death, had he not been a Kings Son, being only committed to safe custody, where he was honourably used.

These

These Tragical Stratagems overpast, and all things in security, yet the beauty of the Land was destroyed by the Armenians, and now the Nobles and Peers of the Land that durst not look over the Castle walls, assembled themselves unto the King, making all the preparation they could for his more honourable entertainment : The Bells rung for joy, and the people with great joy applauded his Victory. Within few days he was again Crowned King of Assyria, and Montelion honoured with such commendations as his worthiness deserved ; every one (as of right they should) attribute that honoured victory of his valour ; all men growing into deep affection towards him, and with rejoicings manifest their love.

C H A P. XVI.

Of the King of *Armenia's* arrival with a new Army ; how *Montelion* Tet *Palian* at liberty, and of a Peace that was concluded.

WHereas certain of the Spyes had knowledge of the approach of the King of Armenia, and brought News thereof to the Court, which stirred up new discord amongst them, for then they began on all sides to arm themselves afresh : But that was soon stayed by the coming of Ambassadors from the King of Armenia, who delivered their Message thus.

Pericles of Assyria, The mighty King of Armenia commands thee to deliver his Son *Palian* in safety, whom he understandeth thou hast taken Prisoner ; withal, he requires restitution to be made of the Crown and Kingdom of Assyria ; which by right of ancient inheritance is his ; otherwise he will bring to puissant and invincible an Army against thee, that shall waste and consume this Land, not leaving City, Town or Houses, he will make the Inhabitants perpetual Bond-slaves, and he will cause thee to fly, or abiding his coming, he will take thee captive, and lead thee into Armenia, where thou shalt remain his Vassal. This is the sum of that he requireth, therefore let us have answer. I will not study, said Pericles, what to say, but thus say to him. His Son is my Prisoner, and I will detain him, as for his threats, I fear them not ; utterly denying his false Title to my Crown, which

which in my absence he seized upon, not by valour, but by Treachery, and tell him that I demand restitution for the wrong he hath done me and my Country, which if he deny, nothing shall make me satisfaction but his Sons death; and tell him thus: Let him with haste return, lest my fury overtake him, and so he feel the mischief he intendeth to me, for I mean to meet him presently, and work such destruction amongst his Souldiers, as shall cause them to seek his life for betraying them into my hands.

Perciles spoke these words with such fury, that the Ambassadors believed he would do it, and so they departed. The King of Armenia little thinking to receive such an answer, but rather performance of his demand, was so enraged, that he presently commanded his Souldiers to march to the City, vowing to redeem his Son, or be taken Prisoner himself. Perciles also had collected a mighty Band of Persians and Assyrians to meet him, that this was likely to prove the hottest Battel that ever was fought in that part of the World.

In the mean time Palian was brought before Perciles, who was seated upon his kingly Throne in great Majesty, and then said: What canst thou alledge to excuse thy self from Death, having rightly deserved the same? Thou knowest that it now resteth in my power to set thee free, or put thee to death; which the just Heavens have inflicted upon thee, as a due punishment for thy Tyranny.

I am (quoth Palian) a King as absolute as thy self, therefore I know thou darrest not put me to death; which if thou shouldst presume to attempt, know that my Father is hard at thy Elbow to revenge the same, whose power thou canst not escape; therefore I besee thee, and dare thee to do the same, for I know thee to be of so cowardly a disposition, that when thou dost once come within my Fathers sight, thou wilt run away. The people that stood by hearing this, cried out, Hang him up, let him dye, let him dye, and it was long before the multitude would be appeased; but at length the King said: Traytor, darrest thou utter these words in my presence? thou shalt assuredly dye, all the world shall not redeem thee, and so commanded his Guard to hew him in pieces, whereupon they began to wound him; but Montelion stepping between them, and humbling him-
self

self upon his knee, thus said : Most Noble King, vouchsafe to hear me speak, and without offence let me claim my Right : This Knight is my Prisoner, and to put him to death without my consent, were to do me wrong : Yet although I speak this, pardon me, I speak not any thing to contradict your will, but I humbly desire your Majesty to grant me this favour, that as I took him, so I may dispose of him.

The King with great haste rose from his Seat and embraced Montelion, saying : Were it my Kingdom, my life, or any thing else that I esteem more than both, that you required, I would for ever curse my heart if I should deny it you, for you have done me so much good, and my debt is to you so great, that if I live a thousand years, I shall never pay : Wherefore I give him freely unto you, and his life withal. I humbly thank you (replied he) and so took his Prisoner by the hand, and after humble Reverence done, he departed, to whom being alone, said : Noble Prince, not expecting reward, nor fearing threats, I here give you liberty. When did he desire him to make choice of his Horse and Armour, and arming himself, rode discourteously away, his stout heart not suffering him to give Montelion thanks : Being come to the Camp, he humbled himself to his Father, who embracing him said : My dear Son welcome ; When strutting up and down, said ; I thought that Dastard Persicles durst not detain thee, for if he had, his life had paid thy Ransom, and shall do yet for keeping thee so long : By Jupiter, this night will I fire the City about his ears, because I know the Coward dares not come forth to meet me.

Hearing his Father thus boast, and knowing how unlikely he was to perform it, such a passion of deep consideration, changed in him such a sudden alteration contrary to his former disposition, and calling to remembrance how lately he was in danger of death, the great power Persicles had about him, the late slaughter he had made amongst his Soldiers, the courtesie of Montelion, but most of all his ingratitude towards him that had given him his life, thus said :

My Noble Father, nor the fear of your Forces, nor Persicles Cowardize (for by his own doom I had dy'd) set me at liberty ; but the courtesie of a Noble Knight who took me Prisoner ; who
when

when *Pericles* had appointed my Death, and the Executioner seizing on me, challenged me to be his Prisoner, honourably armed me, and courteously let me go; therefore I beseech you withdraw your Forces, and offer no wrong to *Pericles*, who never offended you; the Kingdom of *Armenia* is as good as *Assyria*, and better, and it is better to enjoy that with quiet, than both that and this with discontent; if not for that, yet for this, I humbly intreat you to conclude a Peace with *Pericles* for your own safety, for his power is too mighty to be subdued by these small Forces you have brought, he is now allyed to the *Persian*, who is yet no Enemy, but wholly your Friend; but if these Wars continue long, he will prove your Mortal Foe; if you go forwards, I must stay behind, for it were a great dishonour for me to fight against him that hath so honourably set me at liberty; if you should be overcome, how much would it endanger your life? and if your life were in danger do you think we could escape? Besides I will submit my self into the hands of your enemies, or rather spill my own blood before your face, than live to see so dismal a day; therefore I humbly desire you to conclude a Peace.

The King heard out his speeches with silent verations, being so inwardly enraged, and with desire of thirsting after revenge, that his heart was ready to burst with malice; but at last being mollified rather with despair of victory, than of yielding to his Sons request, he said; Let it be as you would have it; for this time you shall over-rule me.

Noble Father (quoth he) I know to conclude this Peace will turn to our everlasting good, and your own content; *Pericles* is honourable, and never offended you, and I know he will embrace it, therefore I desire you, let it be concluded with your free consent; whereupon he gave his consent; willing him to conclude what he thought good.

Palian mounting himself, set spurs to his Horse, with all speed riding towards the City, where he met with *Pericles*'s mighty Band of Souldiers, and desiring to speak with *Montelion*, he kindly embraced him, yielding him so many hearty thanks, with such courtesie, love, and earnest affection, with many earnest vows for preserving his life, that *Montelion* wondered at the sudden alteration

teration in him, that before was so rude and discourteous, most lovingly embraced him: then did he unfold the cause of his coming with such earnestness, entreating Montelion to joyn with him to conclude the peace, that he promised him assistance, so they went both unto the King.

Palian delivered the Message with humble reverence, and Persicles with as much courtesie received it, and so effectually was this wrought, that the peace was accepted, and both the Armies meeting in the field, instead of blows embraced each other, and both the Kings saluted each other, first in strange sort, but afterwards with more familiarity. After many speeches on both sides, Persicles accusing him of wrongs, and he still alledging the contrary, but Palian laboured earnestly to conclude the Peace, yet the Battel was like to joyn, and oftentimes they both grew to great rage, which by Montelion's and Palian's persuasions was concluded. Growing to this conclusion a Peace was ratified for two years, in which time Ambassadors should be sent to the Emperour of Persia, and the King of Macedonia, to entreat their Royal assistance to make an end of this Controversie.

Persicles's heart could hardly endure to yield to his Foe so far, or abstain himself from revenge, or appoint his rightful estate to be determined by the doubtful case of Arbitrement, in his heart disdaining his enemy should have so much scope limited him, as though he had interest at all in his Kingdom, but rather that then he should either absolutely win all, or lose all; but regarding how much he had troubled Deloratus and the Persians, who now desired to return home to their own Countrey; but most of all being desirous to travel in search of his dear Love, from whom he had long been absent, for whose safety he would have lost life, Kingdom and liberty, whose absence was a continual grief to his Conscience, utterly despairing of finding her; but yet that, nor any other ambiguity could cause him to desist, but that he would depart in her search, thinking she was living, therefore he yielded to any thing,

Having taken the King of Armenia's Oath, not to interrupt him in his Kingdom till the time expired, they parted, Persicles to the City, and the King with his Army to Armenia.

mind was linked in such admiration of Montelions Vertues, that he humbly entreated his Fathers leave to bear him company, but he denyed him, reproving him greatly with bitter terms; yet notwithstanding within few days after he departed in disguise. The King would have sent after him to have staid him, but his Nobles perswaded him to the contrary.

Palian being arrived at the Assyrian Court, declared to Montelion the cause of his leaving his Fathers Court, which was with no other intent (he said) than to enjoy his company, and to do Persicles service; which proceeded not from any coloured dissimulation, but from the depth of a constant resolution. Such an alteration had Montelions vertues and his Fathers tyranny wrought in him, that he admired the one, and abhorred the other, of which he gave such manifest tokens; that Persicles had no cause to misdoubt him, nor Montelion to refuse his familiarity.

C H A P. XVII.

How after the Peace concluded, *Persicles* left the Government of *Assyria* to *Pisor*, determining himself to Travel in search of *Constantia*: How they arrived in *Persia*, of their Honourable entertainment, and of the contrarious accidents of Love that beset in the *Persian* Court.

After all these Troubles were over-past, the Persian Souldiers richly sent home, and *Persicles* had established his Kingdom, leaving the same to the Government of *Pisor*, he determined to travel in search of *Constantia*, making the occasion of his departure to be to accompany *Deloratus* into *Persia*, none but *Pisor* and *Montelion* knowing the contrary. By the way as they went *Cothanes* desired them to visit his Habitation, which they rather they did, to see the Cloaths that were found about *Montelion*: They were honourably welcomed, and Royally feasted, *Cothanes's* Lady bringing forth the Packet, which they opened, and well viewed, neither *Persicles* nor *Deloratus* knowing any of them (for they were such as *Constantia* had in *Arabia*.) Amongst the rest there was a Jewel

Jewel of exceeding richness, which Montelson in the presence of them all put about his neck, bowing solemnly never to part with it until he had found out his Parents.

Afterwards they departed, Montelson leaving Cothanes and his Foster-Mother, who bewailed his departure with abundance of tears : But within few days they arrived in Persia, the Emperoz sending out Troops of Gallant Knights to attend them, the States, Nobles, and Peers of the Land in rich attire to entertain them, and himself with the Empress, Piera, and a number of other gallant Ladies, forsaking the Court to meet them ; the Citizens hearing of their approach prepared to entertain them with delightful shows. The Knights met them some two miles from the City, welcoming Deloratus with great reverence, and the other three Knights with courtesie ; the Nobles embracing them, and at the Gate they saw the Emperoz with his Royal Assembly staying their coming, unto whom Deloratus kneeled, whilst they with tears welcomed his safe return, and whilst he embraced Piera, the Emperoz and Empress saluted Persicles ; and when they had left to speak to Piera, they demanded of Deloratus who these strange Knights were. One of them (said he) is our late reconciled friend Palian, and the other is the most valliant Knight Montelson, that by his valour hath preserved our lives, conformed his enemies, and won himself immortal honour. The Emperour had Palian welcome into Persia, and then he very kindly embraced Montelson, who with reverence fell at his feet.

All that beheld him, admired that one so young should be endued with such Chivalry, and the Ladies with their nice eyes surveyed each part of his perfect Lineaments, which they found to be most exquisite. All tedious salutations being past, they came to the Court, and entered with such Royalty, as it made an admiration to the beholders eyes : There might one see the people with greediness throng to behold them, but especially the White Knight, every one asking which was he : that he himself could hear them, which oftentimes made the blood revolve in his cheeks with a lovely blush. To rehearse every particular, would be too tedious ; and to stay long in recital of their Royal Entertainment, Feasts, Speeches and Welcomes, would detain

you from the hearing of Constantia's misfortunes, for such entertainment was there, and every thing performed with such Royalty, as might have becomed the greatest Monarch in the world: After Supper, the time of rest being come, the aged Emperour and Empress had good night to their Guests, and every one betook themselves to their several Lodgings, remitting all conference until the next days opportunity.

The King being alone, studied most part of the night which way to travel in search of Constantia, Montelion in thinking of his unknown Parents, Palian surfeiting in love with Praxentia, and she in commendation of Montelion, Deloratus in pleasure with Piera, and the old Emperour and Empress in joyful remembrance of all their safeties, every one possessed with a several conceit till sleep overcame their senses.

Early the next morning they forsook their Beds, Persicles and Deloratus in conference with the Emperour and Empress, and Piera in the hearing of the Princess, and other Ladies, rehearsing the Wars in Assyria, and the manner of their victory. Montelion in company of Palian, commending the Royalty of the Persians Court, and the beauty of the Ladies; which speech they entered into by reason of Palian, whose heart could not chuse but utter his inward thoughts, which had entertained a surfeiting view of the Princess Praxentia's beauty, which was so exquisite as might have entangled the senses of any man: but Montelion rested as free as one that never thought of love, having his senses so fully possessed with desire to seek his Parents, and search for Constantia, that no other thought should enter his breast; but such a contrariety had blind fortune wrought among them, that every one desired a contrary thing; for Palian doted so much on Praxentia, as she did on Montelion; and he was so far from thinking any such thought, as it was in vain for her to hope: Palian seeking to give her knowledge thereof, and she expecting when Montelion would proffer love to her; and he on the other side, seeking means to hasten Persicles's departure, which he would instantly have done, but that he could not so soon seek to leave the Emperour nor his Sister; yet notwithstanding the Emperour requested him to stay a month, which he could by no means deny. Palian was glad of this, and Praxentia was not sorry: onely

only Montelion thought he would be too tedious because his affections were wholly bent on his Journey.

CHAP. XVIII.

How *Praxentia* sent her Nurse to *Montelion*; how she took *Palian* for *Montelion*, and to him discovered her secrets.

PALIAN devised by all means he could to have conference with the Princess, refusing rest, food, and company, to study thereon; oftentimes enjoying her company, but had not the opportunity he expected, surfeiting with beholding her Beauty, and tying himself faster in the snares of Love, finding no hopes of comfort; but on a day it thus fell out, the desiring ease, sent a Damsel to an old Lady named *Lanula*, willing her to come and speak with her, who presently come, and being alone, they had this conference.

Lanula (said she) I have occasion of your assistance in a matter of great secrecie, which I have refused to impart to any but your self; for the good opinion I have of you, is, that you may do me a pleasure, and everlastingly bind me to requite the same. The old Lady was forward of her self, that without further entreaty she swore she would do as she would have her, were the matter never so great, yea, if it hazarded her own life. I have no reason to mistrust thee (said she) yet I cannot but blush at the rehearsal of it. A lady (quoth she) will you pardon me if I tell you what it is; Is it not Love? Yes (said she) it is so, I am in love, but I fear I am not beloved, and him I love, is so honourable a knight, as the world yields not his fellow, but being a stranger and unknown, I know he dares not tell that he loves me, because my Father will never consent thereto; yet I could be contented with his Estate, were it never so mean; I have often been in his company shewing my self desirous thereof, which any but himself might perceive, but I spent that labour in vain, and shall do still, unless you work some means in my behalf. Tell me his name (said *Lanula*) and before many hours past, I will by some means or other have conference with him. It is the strange knight *Montelion*, say

what thou wilt to him, without impeaching my modesty, and I care not; for not being by, I shall not blush, neither care I to hazard any thing, for if he once go from hence, I shall never see him again. As she had spoken that word, she espied him walking alone at the further end of the Garden, entring into a Grobe: Ponder he is (said Praxentia) Lanula told her she would then speak, and so departed.

Montelion being come to the further end of the Garden, espied Palian lying upon a Bank, either sleeping, or in a deep study, passing by him unseen; for he desired no Company, and entred the Grobe: Lanula also seeing him, espied Palian, not knowing either, saluting him instead of Montelion, said: Sir Knight, to you I have a matter of importance to discover, if your name be *Montelion*: He answered not, but with Courtelle had her say on: There is (said she) a Lady of great Renown in this Court, that beareth you deep Affection, who committed her Counsels to me, (but with no intent that I should disclose them) yet pitying her Grief, and withal wishing your Preferment, am thus bold to intercept your meditation, hoping that this News cannot be but gratefully accepted. I heartily thank you (quoth he) assuring you that I am every way as deeply in love as any, but with one so far my better, that fearing to offend maketh me silent; therefore let me know the Ladies name. It is *Praxentia* (said she) And to her (quoth he) I owe my Life, Love, Affections, and Liberty. Sir (said she) I am glad thereof, and if you will follow my directions I will work so effectually, that you shall enjoy her Love, whosoever saith to the contrary. I will be ruled by you (quoth he) neither will I refuse any attempt to attain the same, therefore pray tell me where I may find you, and soon in the evening I will come to you. My name is *Lanula* (said she) and you shall have me in the Lodgings over the Postern in the private Garden. So she departed, leaving him in a deep meditation what to do to enjoy her love, and how to do it without dishonour to himself, and injury to Montelion, but that he thought impossible, entring into these meditations.

How contrary is my hap to all good success, that maketh me hazard my Honour, to adventure such a task as may bring me to perpetual Infamy? How often hath my life been hazarded by Monte-

Montelions hand : and yet like a Frantick Man forsake my Friends to follow him : Could any thing have fallen out more miserable, than for me to dote on her that loveth another, and be the only Man that hath always prevented my good Fortune : Shall I then cherish this love, or root it out of my heart, as a poison that will infect my Soul : for the King her Father will never yield his consent, which is worse, she will not love me, I will therefore leave it off, and salve the wound before it be past recovery, and rather abandon this Court, my Life, Country, and Friends, than sue for love in another mans name.

Revolving many of these Cogitations, at last he espied Montelion coming back from the Grove, unto whom he spake in this manner.

Sir Knight, as I lay slumbering on this Bank, my senses were greatly troubled with your remembrance ; for to my thinking an old Lady taking me for you, told me that a Lady of great Dignity did love me exceedingly, and that she came on purpose to know how I stood affected : Further my dream continued not, but awaking I espied you, and have uttered all to you : Now who this Lady should be, I know not, unless it be the Princess *Praxentia*.

Montelion made this answer : What this should mean I know not, neither is it to be regarded, for dreams are but idle phantasies, procured by the imagination of the dreamer, thinking that of another, which he wisheth to himself, which is more likely, for the Princess were over-sound to place her love on so dejected a stranger as my self, and if she did so, it were in vain, for I cannot now become a Bond-Slave, were it to the greatest Princess in the world : I speak not this as rejecting her courtship, but as one that esteemeth himself altogether unworthy thereof. It may be (said Palian) though you account your self fortunate, yet you dare not trust me, and therefore you conceal it. Not so (quoth he) I have uttered all I think or ever intend. He was very glad to hear him say so, but made no show thereof, passing all the way between them and the Palace in such like communication together.

C H A P. XXIX.

How *Palian* in a disguise had conference with *Praxemia*, who took him for *Montelion*.

By this time *Palian* was gotten to his Chamber, being much troubled in his mind, striving to overcome his Love, and yet to love, and attain her without hazarding his Honour; but his affections had the superiority, and those sparks of virtue that was but newly kindled in his breast, vanished, and he resolved to try the uttermost issue, although it were in another Name.

Evening drawing nigh, he remembered his promise, which was to repair to the old Lady, and therefore thither he went, but so secretly as might be, where he found her staying for him, of whom he demanded what good News? When she shutting fast the door, said: After I departed from you in the Garden, I went to the Princess and told her what Speeches I had with you, which rejoiced her heart, willing me to let you understand, that it is not lewd desire, immodest love, nor indiscreet intemperance, that hath moved her to this liking, but the report of your valour, regard of your virtues, and the work that nature did never work in her before, therefore she desires you to be constant, secret, and loyal, not to regard her love the less for being easily won, but to impute the same to destiny, that hath ordained him, (unknown) to that Dignity, who hath refused to match her self to the greatest Emperors in the World. By Heaven (said he) my heart is so tyed to her in Bonds of constant Love, that should she command me to rip it out, I would do it to fulfil her desire, and shew my duty.

Few words (said she) are best, and by reason of her Fathers displeasure, she dares not converse with you openly; but she hath yielded to be directed by me, therefore late this night come to my Chamber, and I will get you the Habit of a Gardener, in which disguise, you may with safety pass through the Garden, and enter the Chamber. He yielding her many thanks, departed, and she went and certified the Princess what she had determined, whose love being grown to a settled resolution, and

desirous to ease her of her disquiet, gladly consented thereunto thinking the time too tedious, company troublesome, and her Supper unlaboury, to taste the sweetness of her stolen affection. Palian at the time appointed went to Lanula, who had already provided his disguise wherewith he apparelled himself and took her directions to find the entrance into her Chamber.

Palian being entered the Garden found the door shut, but Praxentia having a sight of him out at her window, came down herself to open the same. His heart was so ravished with joy of her presence, that he could not speak, but humbling himself upon his knee, said, Vertuous Lady I humbly beseech you to pardon this my boldness, which I would never have undertaken, had not some former hope animated me thereunto; but since it is your gracious pleasure so much to honour my unworthiness, I humbly give my heart to your disposition, which shall account it self everlastingly happy to be employed in your service.

Good Knight (said she) had I not been fully assured of your vertues, I should never have admitted you this labour; therefore I accept your gift, and in exchange thereof will give you mine, so that you promise me to use it honourably. Else (said he) let me become the infamous reproach of all the world, let my joys be turned into sorrows, my health into sickness, my pleasure into pain and all that I wish to prove my good, turn to everlasting misery. Your Protestations, dear Knight (quod she) are of sufficiency to overcome my yielding heart, that harboureth no misdoubt of your disloyal meaning, but is fully assured your vertues cannot harbour dissimulation, that is altogether different from vertue: therefore trusting you more than myself, I admit you that labour I never before granted, which is to receive you as my chosen friend, trusting you will be as faithful as I desire, and will not reward my labour with disloyalty.

So taking him by the hand she led him up into her Chamber, where many speeches past betwixt them, he with earnestness intreating her consent to love him; and she binding him by many Oaths and Vows to be constant. He durst not utter many speeches lest he should be discovered, also his conscience being guilty, withheld him from boldness, and though peradventure she would have taken any thing in good part, yet fear to discover himself did

make him think no such matter, but in his behaviour so near as he could, framed himself to the state of Montelion, which pleased her well, who although she were very affectionate her self, yet she imputed his coloured modesty to virtue, and his dissimulation to pure modesty, that by his conference, he was fully assured of her love, and she of his loyalty, being now constrained by reason of the days approach, to break off their communication, referring their next meeting to Lanulacs direction parting with many courteous farewells; she fully contented, he somewhat discontented, that he had attained that labour in another mans name, which if he had attained as proper to himself, he should have desired himself most happy; being clogged with these cogitations, he got to Lanulacs Chamber, to whom he discovered his fortunate success, telling her, that in the evening he would come to her to know the Princes pleasure, and her direction to speak with her another time.

C H A P. XX.

How Montelion was loved by Praxentia, how he was prevented by Palian of speaking to her, who in disguise lay with her.

IN the morning early the Prince's forsook her Rest, and though she slept but little that night, yet she was loth to be accused of sloth, and apparelled her self, framing a more than ordinary joyful Countenance (for her mind was more at ease) he attended the Emperess in company of other Ladies: And it fell out that day, that the Emperoz with the Dukes of the Land treated with Persicles, Montelion and Palian, which fell out according to her Wish, that she might behold her beloved Knight with a surfeiting view, and he was no less glad than she, that he might see her on whom his heart was fixed; and every one saving Persicles and Montelion had their hearts inclining to despair, only they two rested sad, which was easily to be espied and closely noted by Praxentia with one conceit, and Palian with another.

At Dinner time Praxentia's eyes were fixed on Montelion, and Palian's on hers bending down with a heavy aspect, which put her

her into many cogitations, sometimes thinking he disdain'd to look on her openly, who had shewn her self so kind in secret, and then she thought it was fear to discover her love, (which is easily discovered by the eyes) but when again she saw he made no regard to her, her colour often changed, sometimes with grief, sometimes with anger, sometimes with fear, fixing her eyes steadfastly on him, then glancing about to see if any noted her: Palian minded her, and well understood her meaning, as earnestly noting her behaviour as she did Montelion's, often changing his countenance, sometimes with fear to be seen, and then with a jealous conceit, then with an amorous thought, and then again with accusing himself of disloyal dealing both towards her and him.

Pierces mind was most at leisure to note all, which she performed with diligence; and seeing their eyes placed on several objects, she thought there was as contrary a sympathy in their affections, well perceiving Palian's deceit, Praxentia's disfigure, and Montelion's careless regard of either; by a pious token, unless of any, she gave her brother an instance thereof: he quickly conceived her meaning, and jump'd with her in opinion, all dinner time noting them; which being past, and Mucke calling the Room with pleasant harmony; Percicles pulling Montelion by the sleeve, whisper'd these words softly into his ear. Friend rouse your self from this sad dump, and behold how you are noted; Oh my life the Princess is in Love with you, and if it be so, you may account your self most happy.

My Lord (replied he) you are dispos'd to jest; no such good fortune will fall to me, yet if it did, I know I should never enjoy it. Why (quoth he) had you but seen so much as I, and noted her looks, you would think so too: Follow my counsel, do but try, and you shall find it so: What if she were Empress of the whole world, would you not venture? were she not the better to be beloved, and have not you the less cause to despair: that she would refuse your Love? All the doubt you have, is her Fathers dislike; but fear not that; Time may bring things unlock'd for so good effect; do but follow my counsel for this time, and after I will tell you more.

At this time the Mucke was ended, and Montelion call his

eye on Praxentia, who steadfastly looked on him, her heart was so much grieved with contrary thoughts, that the water was ready to overflow her eyes. When Montelion saw that, he presently began to perceive some hope, and by little and little Love stole the possession of his heart, withal he remembered what Palian had before said to him all this seemed likelihood that it was so: As he continued in these thoughts and with more boldness had viewed her well (whose eyes were never off him) the Musick began to sound again, and the old Emperour of Persia being pleasant and merry with feasting, took the Emperess by the hand to dance; Persicles seeing that, took Piera; then said the Emperour, is there none will make a third? Piera desirous to shew Montelion any favour, desired him to do it. But he with mildness, made a refusal, in regard of his duty to the Emperour. But suddenly Palian stepped up and took Praxentia to dance with him, who being of a mild behaviour refused not, and the rather, that none should note her affection to Montelion which she assured her self, he could not call in question.

Montelion was exceedingly vexed to be so prevented, yet smothered the same with a pleasant countenance. The Musick being ended the Emperour with the Emperess departed, leading them to their recreation. Then Palian began to be disquieted, with fear lest Montelion by conference with Praxentia should discover his last deceit, and he by that means be prevented of all future hope, therefore he used such means that Montelion could have no conference with her, which he by reason of his fear, durst not seek nor expect, thinking to have a time of more convenience to meet.

All this while Montelion did but intangle himself in the snare of affection, still looking to like and liking to love, and the more he looked the more he loved, being for that time contented to look, for other hope he attained not, by reason of Palian's prevention, and his own fear to be accounted bold, which he thought she might well impute to his mean estate. The time of departure being come, and every one ready to bid adieu. Praxentia gave him a sign of her love, with a modest, gentle, and kind look, and he her of his duty, with low courtesie.

Every one departed, Praxentia troubled with the doubt of she could not tell what; for weighing his behaviour she could not com-

compare it to be like the behaviour of an assured Lover, neither could she account it disdain or want of government, for she knew him wise; not want of audacity, for he was bold enough in other matters, nor inconstancy, for she could not perceive his looks bent upon another; troubled with a multitude of these passions, by reason of the truth, she made the best construction of all things, wishing Palian had been further off that day, who she thought of purpose had intercepted their conference. But to ease her of these troubled cogitations, Lanula comes in with a message from Palian, for as soon as the company was parted, he went to her and noting with what little respect Montelion had that day regarded her, he thought some mischief might cross his further intent, and fearing withal lest he should send to her, he sent this Message, That with all humility he desired her not to misconceive his meaning, for the little respect he gave unto her, was with no other intent than to avoid suspicion, his heart being entirely bound in all duty to her command. This message pleased her well, and banished all miske of malice from her heart, devising with Lanula for a convenient time to have conference with him.

Montelion had now taken such a view of her beauty, that he yielded to loves thrall, and according to his distempered mind was pleased with nothing but solitariness, in silence to meditate upon his misfortune, on his Love, and his unlikeliest to attain thereto; on Palian's prevention and his unknown estate, and on his botomed journey in search of Constantia: being troubled with such contrarieties, that he could not resolve upon any thing, tiring his senses with meditation, wearing his heart with grief, and weakening his body with abstinence, void of means, hopes, or comfort, he thought to write but he wanted a secret Messenger; then he thought within himself to speak to her, but he fearing a denial would be his reward, and that would be worse than Death.

Thus troubled in mind, he betook himself to his rest, scarce able to give his eyes one minutes sleep until morning, and then again as void of comfort as if he dreamed a thousand impossibilities, neither able by the counsel of Persicles nor otherwise, to devise a means to speak, for his love was so violent, that it could not

be permanent. Fortune intending quickly to overturn the same, for Palian by indirect policy, dealt so cunningly, that by often recourse unto her, he won her to such an absolute consent, that she rested wholly at his disposition, never coming to her but in secret, and so late that all lights were out: Besides, the old Lady still taking him for Montekion, never made question but that it was he, by which means he always passed undetected, and she told all her secrets unto him, that whatsoever he would desire she performed; and all that he perswaded her to, was but means to prevent his disloyalty, perswading her to keep her Chamber for many days, so that contrary to her expectations, with discomposure of watching and keeping her self in a close room she began to wax sickly, which Lanula made known unto him, appointing him the next day to come to her, and he should know when again to visit her, and in the mean time she wrought so effectually with the Emperor and Empress, as they had appointed her to be her keeper, and none to come at her, but upon her sufferance which pleased the Princess well. Night being come, Palian went to Lanula's Chamber, where he found her, declaring all that had happened, appointing him that night to come thither. Lanula returning, would not make known his coming to her that night, because she should not break her sleep.

At the time appointed Palian was in the Garden, and Lanula ready to receive him, conducting him up the stairs to the Princess Chamber, who was then in her bed and fast asleep: seating himself down by her, although the lights were out, yet by the brightness of the Moon, whose splendor shined clear upon the Bed, he might take a view of her, who by reason of the heat, lay with all the Curtains folded, and the covering that lay upon her so thin, that the full proportion of her delicate body might easily be seen, the same being folded down below her waste, her neck naked, and her Ivory breasts passing description, laying forth their beauties, her arms spread one above her head, the other down by her side.

Palian beholding this pleasant sight (which was able to ravish the senses of a modest beholder) his heart was so inflamed as he had much ado to abstain from touching that Beauty. He had not stood long, but being troubled with some humming motion,

motion, she awoke, and espying one so near her bed side, was ready to give a shriek, but with more regard noting his habit, she knew him, throwing her self from his sight, until he entreated her to pardon his boldness, protesting his intent was not to disquiet her.

I am not disquieted (quoth she) now I know you, but I marvel I was not acquainted with your coming, it is Lanula's doings hath used me thus immodestly. I humbly beseech you (quoth he) take no offence thereat, but pardon us both, the greatest fault is mine, for which I am contented to abide any punishment. Your punishment (said she) cannot be great, your offences being done to me that love you more than my self.

And if I have discovered what modesty will not permit, The offence being done by you, pray pardon it.

The sight quoth he can procure no offence, for it hurteth not, therefore in seeing I committed no injury; but where there is mutual Love, and consent in Love, there nothing can breed offence but disloyalty, which is as far from me as impossibilities, then I can no way offend but in that, and in that I will never offend: All this may be granted (quoth she) in you but not in me; for I count it a great offence to be immodest, and nothing more contrary to perfect vertue.

You cannot offend (quoth he) in that to me, for having given your self mine, why should I not both see, touch and enjoy you, the first being granted, the last cannot be denied: It is not the outward action that unites the heart, but the inward consent. I deny you not (said she) all that I have is yours, by my own consent and free gift, yet you must forbear possession until the Bargain be confirmed before witnesses; otherwise your Title is not good. Yes (said he) my Title is better by your Gift than by a thousand witnesses; for if you deny, they cannot avail me, therefore since you cannot deny me interest, yield me possession.

These words were intermingled with many kisses and embraces able to stir affections to the height; so that knowing his meaning by his words, she said: Dear Knight, I understand your meaning which I will not, nor cannot grant, but in any thing else you shall command me, only I desire and am resolved to preserve my Virginity without blemish; therefore good Knight.

Knight request not, having so much as you cannot desire more, my Life, my Company, my Love, and all is at your disposition; only I challenge you as you are a Knight, not to blemish my virtue.

Notwithstanding, he so much prevailed with her at last, that she gave her consent, he should the next night be joyned to her in marriage, by such means as she would compass, and then he should without denial attain his desire.

This contented him not, but he grew to such importunate requests intermingled with such Oaths and Protections, being such as no reasonable man would have demanded, and framing in himself such a kind of desperate behaviour, that she could not tell how to deny him, and at last calling Lanula unto her, she whispered a few words in her ear, whereupon drawing the curtains, she departed the Chamber.

Palian seeing that, put off his apparel, and laid himself down by her, folding her delicate body in his arms, with sweet embraces expressing both their loves, but she kept her word, for notwithstanding, he did what else he desired, yet she reserved her Virginity inviolable; assuring him by so many entreaties for to leave that unattempted, often intermingling her words with such effusion of tears, that the hardest heart would have yielded unto her, promising, that if she did not compass her marriage the next night, that he should assuredly attain his desire, though she hazarded her life to accomplish it.

In these and such like speeches, the night was unawares to them overpast, and the necessity of the time forced his departure, that taking his leave of her with many ceremonious farewells, he apparelled himself, and left her to meditate on that which had past between them.

CHAP. XXXI

How Montelion discovered Palian's deceit, and how he was in some sort revenged, hasting Pericles to depart.

It chanced that morning that Montelion was early up, and being possessed with a troubled head, and a love sick heart, walked up and down the Garden, and in a melancholy dump seated himself down in an Arbour over against Praxentia's Lodging, even at the same time as Palian departed, who seeing one come privately from thence, secretly following him till he came to his Lodging, Montelion then began to think it was some messenger either sent from her to Palian, or returned with an answer of some Message he had delivered, or that it might be Palian himself, whom he resembled in proportion, but not in habit.

The day now growing aged, he found out Pericles, with whom he kept company all that day, thinking indeed that it was Palian himself that he had seen, for that he had kept his chamber most part of the day. When it grew towards night, he disguised himself and girding his Sword to his side, he entered the Garden; and as he walked by the door, with purpose to take up his standing in the Arbour, Lanula was come down by the way to bring a Letter in, who should secretly knit up the marriage, and espying one go by, she thought it was him that was appointed to come, and called saying, who is there, Montelion? he hearing that, said it is I. You come to soon (quoth she) the Letter that shall marry you to Praxentia is not yet come, for whom I am now going. He was half amazed, but thinking to find out the truth, said: What shall I do then (quoth he?) Return and change your Apparel, for if you come in this he will be offended, for many troubled thoughts have possessed her mind this day; she fell out with me wonderfully for bringing you in the last night, when she was in bed; and when she had made draw the curtains and be gone, I thought you would have pleased her, ere you parted: But faith tell me, was she not kind; had you not what you would have? Montelion blushing to hear her innuendous Questions, made

no answer, looking her until her flattering tongue had bewayed all the mischief her self was guilty of. Well (quoth she) stay here till I am returned, and then you shall go with me,) for I dare not let you in before.

Montelion wondering at this accident by the circumstances that he had heard assured himself that some man in his name had attained her love, which fretted his heart with such vexation, that he was ready to run mad with grief: but calling himself to remembrance, he said, you may save the labor, I have dealt with one to that effect, who promised me to meet me within this hour, return therefore, and my self will stay his coming. Lanula thought nothing, but went in, telling the Princess who she returned to. Montelion covering his face as privately as he could from being discovered, walked up and down by the way, and in short space he espied Palian coming, and asked who was there, art you Montelion? I am, said Palian. I am the Fryer (quoth he) that am appointed to marry you to Praxentia; with that he embraced him, desiring him to make no question, but with all speed to dispatch the thing he had undertaken. I will do it (said he) out of hand. Being both together come to the way, and by Lanula brought up into the Chamber, Praxentia embraced Palian saying, Welcome my dear Knight Montelion, this joyful hour shall make us both happy, which I have with great desire wished for.

I cannot (quoth he) yield you more than hearty thanks, and vow by heaven and earth never to deal dishonestly with you in thought, word, or deed, therefore according to your pleasure let it be done. Montelion so well as he could counterfeited the Fryer, and desired a light: My friend (said he) it may discover us: shall I then wed (quoth he) I know not whom? Nay (said Lanula) never fear to be discovered, for on my life here is none suspecter. With that she lighted a Candle, setting it far off on the Table: and presently he said to Praxentia, this is not Montelion, but some villain that hath betrayed you, and discovering his face they both knew him. Her heart with sudden grief was ready to burst, and he with a sad countenance stood as one transfixed, and Lanula with abundance of tears and wringing her hands, and he with very shame, stood as one bereft of sense whilst Montelion

said:

said: What disloyal and most dishonourable dealing is this in a Prince, whose mind should harbour nothing but vertue? can dissimulation take such deep root in a Royal breast? Then well may base born Peasants be excused for barbarous and faithless dealing; unworthy to be so worthy of that name. Was there none to exercise your detested practice upon, but the Daughter of a King, and in the name of a strange Knight, that by his deeds seeketh honour? What impiety can be compared to this? Indeed such an Act desireth obscurity, therefore you did well to deny light, for were it day the Sun would blush, or withdraw his splendor amongst the misty Clouds to behold it. Well may he live, but for ever will he be hated, that seeketh to fulfil his content by such disloyal dealing.

Base fellow (quoth Palian) presumest thou upon my lady to abuse me? I count it no dishonour to win the love of so beautiful a Lady by any hazard: yet it grieveeth me that I was compelled to name my self after him I account my Inferiour. I (said she) you are superior in birth, but not in vertue. By Heaven (quoth Montelion) thou hast so much dishonoured this Lady, and injured me that thou art not worthy to live, and were it not to offend her Sacred eyes with slaughter, she should behold thy Massacre, with that he drew his Sword.

Now good friend (quoth she) stay thy hand, indeed it will offend me, therefore let him go and live to my dishonour and his shame; for I will not be guilty of his death. And I beseech thee as thou savourest vertue not to disclose it to any, lest hearing it spoken by others, it procure my death; as for him I think shame will withhold him from blazing his own and my reproach, for Lanula, she had done me wrong against her will. For my part, dear Lady, (quoth Montelion) it shall never pass my lips, whilst Life doth last, for I so much abhor the fact, that I hate for to hear of it.

Palian seeing his policy disclosed, thought it was now no time to retreat, for he well perceived she most fully hated him, he was to overcome, that he stood like a living creature transformed to a senseless picture, she pulled from her neck a rich Jewel, and gave to Montelion in consideration of his pains, withdrawing her from their Company. Palian what with Shame and Grief went from

thence in a rage ready to run mad, spending his time in such anguish, studies, plots and devices, which way to win her love, that within short space he became so sick that all men expected his death.

Montelion casting off the affection he had entertained, with a conceit that Palian had dishonoured her, (as he might well suppose by Lanula's speeches) hastened Pericles in search of Constantia, not once discovering the reason why he had altered his mind, resolving never to set his fancy upon Ladies beauty again, which did but disquiet the mind, and make it unapt to practise vertue, promising never to leave searching until he had found his Parents, and asd him in search of Constantia.

The prestred day being come, they armed themselves, none knowing the intent of their departure but Piera. Taking their leave of the Emperoz and Empress with great solemnity, the hearty love of thousands of Persians wishing them good success, many seeming dead with grief for their departure, who with their Cities Turneyes, and Triumphs, had delighted the eyes of all the beholders. Pericles was armed in black Armour, with all his furniture correspondant, and Montelion in Armour of silver without any Device at all therein, with his Horse and furniture as white as snow, that by their difference they might easily be known by all men.

CHAP. XXII.

Of certain strange Adventures that beset Pericles and Montelion by which they were parted. The conference that Pericles had with Delatus, which containeth the History of Delatus's misfortunes. How Pericles by Delatus's counsel returned into Assyria.

BEing without the City, and parted from all Company, they travelled towards Arabia, spending many days without any adventure, and overpassing the tediousness of that travel, in conference of ludy matters, but especially Pericles deciphered the Favor, Proportion, Beauty and Countenance of Constantia, that Montelion might the better know her. With tr-
dions

dious trabel, they arriv'd in a pleasant valley, through the midst
 whercof ran a most pleasant River, whose Crystal Streams ran
 with great swiftness, washing the pebble stones in the bottom so
 clear, that they might easily be discerned. Riding along by the
 Rivers side, they beheld afar off two Damselfs all in white on
 horseback, crossing the Meadow with such swiftness, that they were
 soon out of sight. Montelion desiring to know what they were,
 desired Pericles to return, with that he spurred his horse who
 ran so swiftly, that the earth seemed to shake under him, riding
 a mile, before he could overtake them, but so soon as they es-
 pied him, they turned back, and one of them said: As thou art a
 Knight, and knowest the distress of wronged Ladies, pity us, and
 purchase your aid to redeem our Mistress, who was even now
 taken from us by these monstrous Gyants: Fair Virgins (quoth
 he) I profess Arms, and to my uttermost will assist you, else
 were I not worthy of the name of a Knight, therefore let me
 know her name. She is (said they) Daughter to Amphiadore
 Duke of Ila, her name is Philotheta; for Beauty, Vertue, Mo-
 desty, Shape, Courtisie, Humility, Temperance, Chastity, and
 Wisdom, not to be equalled, therefore the more to be pitied, and
 succoured in distress; we are posting back to bring this heavy
 Petros unto the Court, and whilst we stay here, she runs in fur-
 ther danger. Which way went they (said he?) directly by the way
 we came (quoth they) whom we should have followed further,
 but that we durst not venture over the River after them; with
 that Montelion returned back, declaring to Pericles what he
 had heard. He report he not (said Pericles) the Damsels
 have not flatteringly praised her, I have before this heard of her.
 Then both of them halted to follow her, but passed that river with
 much danger of drowning. When they had rode two hours, they
 met with a Country-swain, running forward so fearfully as if
 he had been pursued: fellow (said Pericles) what ailest thou?
 O Sir (quoth he) I met with three of the largest men that ever
 I beheld in my Life, carrying a Lady that made great lamenta-
 tion. Hearing this, they posted down the way that was beaten
 plain, at last the same parted into two ways, and being doubtful
 which of them to take, they concluded to part, embracing each
 other as if they should never meet again, Pericles on the right
 hand.

hand and Montelion on the left. On whose several Adventures strange accidents befall.

Pericles rode on with great swiftness, not once setting eye on them, for that way they went not: therefore he spent much labor in vain, until it grew to night, and then he thought it vain to seek them, and wandred about to seek some convenient place to rest in, but he could not, for those desarts were not inhabited. At last drawing nigh unto a rocky hill, he might espy a glimmering light to shine through the hollow chifters thereof; and thitherwards he went, perceiving it to be some poor habitation, he alighted, tying his horse to a bush and knocking at the door, it opened of it self, and he espied an aged man sitting over a little fire, very busie mending of shoes, which he ceased; and casting up his eyes, and espying Pericles said unto him: Come in good Knight, distress I know hath brought you hither, else you would not walk these desarts so late. Pardon me good Father (quoth he) for this bold intrusion. You guess aright of my estate, for I have wandred out of my way, and sought long for some habitation, but was frustrated, until I was brought hither by the light of your Candle. Sir, said the old man, you are welcome, and I wish I were able to comfort you in some good sort, but such as my poor habitation yieldeth, if you please to stay this night, shall be at your command: Neither are you the first man that hath been entertained by me: therefore disdain me not for my good will: Father (said he) I greatly accept your proffer, and thank you for this kindness which exceeds my desert, or means to require it, and the rather I desire your company and conference, by reason I am but a stranger in this Country, and would gladly hear something thereof by your report. Sir (said the Hermit) first sit down and take such spare Diet as my house affords, and then I will tell you what I can to satisfy you: Whereupon the Hermit thus began,

Sir, I shall first discover what I am and the cause of my being in this obscure place, and withal discover those things that you think are beyond my knowledge. For no want of Misfortune or fear of being discovered, hath made me chase this solitary life, but my own voluntary fancy which perswades me I can no way live with my unfortunate Disposition: neither would I

I hope you think I intend to fill your ears with idle prattle, or repetition of toyes, but as I intend to ease your heart of some of the care it possesseth; so I desire you by hearing my misfortune and aiding my estate, to ease me, or at least to comfort me with hope of your faithful assistance; for I know your Name, Countrey, cause of travel, means of remedy, and your success hereafter, which I will declare unto you, when you have heard out my Tragick story, which I cannot but utter first.

Pericles wondred to hear his speech, little thinking he could perform what he promised, but yet determining to try him, and desirous of comfort, he encreased him to proceed, for he was desirous to hear his discourse. Sir (said the Hermit) my name in my flourishing estate was called Delarbus, my dignity and Dukedom of Ila, which I enjoyed many years in quiet, being both enriched in the Gifts of Fortune and Nature; for in my youth I chanced to set my affection on the beauty of Alisala, being Daughter to Gentleman of Antiochia, not for her possessions, but for her beauty, which surpassed all the Ladies of the South part of this Continent; I sued long, and at last obtained her consent, married her, and brought her into Ila, where I lived with her a year in great content, being in that space enriched with a Daughter naming her Philotheta, in her infancy shewing what more years would perform in her more exquisite beauty, which is the Virgin you now travel in search of.

Living in this blissful content, there chanced a Knight named Amphidoro to take a view of my fair Alisala's beauty, which at the first sight pierced so deep, that he was intangled therewith, and laboured by all means to grow into familiarity, thereby to enjoy more fully her sight and company: Fortune and my self so favoured him, that I esteemed so well of his company, that I did think my self not well when he was from me: he on the other side, seeming so much to effect me, that I admired his kindness. All this time he insinuated himself into Alisala's company, she also esteeming so honourably of him, that by reason of the love between him & me, and her little suspect of his disloyal dealing, she always admitted him into her company, and used him so familiarly, that she made him privy to all her counsels. Notwithstanding all this, he durst

not.

not shew love to her, seeing indeed her vertue to be such, that he did think it impossible to attain it; thinking it better to live in Silence, and enjoy her company, than by uttering his affection to be deprived of all comfort. Upon a time (as he did) there arrived at my Castle another Knight, named *Pallastus*, who in the same manner as he had done, surfeited on *Alfala's* Beauty, and was admitted to mine and *Amphiado's* company, both esteeming well of him for many honourable qualities that he was endued withal; as little suspecting *Amphiado's* love as he did his, nor I, nor *Alfala* once thinking any such matter, for that our kindness bred to us such familiarity, as many passionate and amorous actions might be acted, and yet no way suspected.

Thus did I live in great content some two years, spending my time in Hawking, Hunting, and other pastimes, as void of disquiet as heart could wish, thinking my self happy in their kindness, but most in *Alfala's* beauty; they with coloured courtesie seeming to live by enjoying my company and familiarity, and she as much as I esteeming them for their love: But at last this pleasant Summer began to turn to Winter, and our sweet content to discontent; for *Pallastus's* love burst into a flame, which he was unable to restrain, that in secret he gave *Alfala* knowledge thereof, which was as horrid to her hearing, as for one to hear that he hath drunk poison: but notwithstanding, her mind being endued with vertue & courtesie, in kind sort reproved him, wishing him not to prosecute any such matter, for she would never yield thereto; notwithstanding her courteous denial, bred in him no remorse, but rather hope of comfort, that continually he followed his Suit, which bred much trouble in her mind, that whereas she was before delightful & pleasant, she became so melancholy and sad, that I admired at it, but I could not learn the cause thereof, thinking it had been some Sickness, rather than trouble of mind: Being long thus troubled with his love, she began to devise how to be rid of it, that so it might not come to my knowledge, for her vertuous love made her loth to disquiet me, relying upon *Amphiado's* vertues, she thought by his assistance to rid her self of *Pallastus*, therefore on a time being with him in secret, she told all the circumstance to him, desiring his counsell and to dissuade *Pallastus* from doing me
such

such dishonour, *Amphiador's* heart was suddenly possess'd with a jealous conceit against the said *Pallefus*; but he meant by that means to attain his desire, and coming to *Pallefus* he told him what *Alfala* had made him privy unto, not dissuading him, but counselling him to persist therein, promising he would by all means he could further the same. *Pallefus* was somewhat comforted therewith, and she was more chearful, hoping by *Amphiador's* means to be rid of his Love.

Amphiador one day being alone with me in my Forrest, first using many entreaties to me to be secret, and binding me by many oaths not to declare it to any, he told me that *Pallefus* did make love to *Alfala*, and that it was likely she would yield thereto, giving me notice that they oftentimes met in secret, and withal, giving me counsel to note their glances and behaviours, and I should find that to be true, which I least thought of, protesting that meer love to me in regard of my honour, and his own duty, bound him to discover it, which otherwise he would never have revealed: with this my mind was much disquieted, but I would not too rashly give credit to his speeches, before I had observed their behaviour sometime, which I found to be somewhat familiar, of deep affection on his part, but on hers with a contrary intent, lest her countenance bewray his love to me, which she knew would breed my disquiet. By reason of *Amphiador's* perswasion, who continually augmented my suspicion I then began to suspect them, and grew to extream jealousy, assuring my self they dealt disloyally with me; purposing to work revenge against them: but then he began to perswade me not to condemn them without manifest proof, as much perswading me not to think so, as before he had done to perswade me thereto: nothing then could alter my mind, my vehement disquiet would not suffer me to rest, nor to find his deceit. One day being alone I complained against my hard fortune and her disloyalty, and in the midst of these complaints he found me out, intending by my overthrow to work his desire. I seeing him near me, after some conference, I desired him to counsel me the best way to salve these evils, to be assured of the truth, and to do it without my reproach or her scandal, for I am

loth to accuse her with just proof. If (said he) I may then counsel you, thus would I advise you to do; The King is now sick, and hath sent for many of his Nobles to come to him, say you also, that you have received Letters from him, and that you must three days hence depart to the Court, by this you shall find out the truth thereof, and at the time of your departure desire *Pallastus* to bear you company, which if he refuse, you may then judge of him accordingly, my self will then accompany you to my Castle, wherein you shall remain in secret a while, and I in a disguise unknown to any, will return, and will carefully note their behaviour at all times to find the truth thereof. I liked well of his counsel, and followed the same, making my departure known to *Alfala*, who with a heavy heart lamented to hear of my absence, which then (by reason of my suspect) I esteemed to be dissimulation: *Amphiadoz* in the mean time went to *Pallastus*, and told him by reason of some conceit or suspicion I had lately conceived, he would carry him with me to the Court, and therefore willed him to be absent at that instant. The time of my departure being come, I thought to find him, but he was gone, which augmented my suspicion to a resolution, but intending to try the utmost of all, and trusting to *Amphiadoz*'s faithfulness, I went with him unto his Castle, staying there three days: in the mean time, (I thinking he had been returned to my Castle) he went to an Enchanter named *Penthasus*, and brought him to my Castle, showing him *Philotheta*, promising him that if he would but work means to rid me away, so that I might never return, when she came to years to produce her to consent to his Love. *Penthasus* at the first sight liked the proffer, and promised to undertake the same, taking a solemn Oath never to discover it. Now fearing lest some other should prevent him, and to avoid his Wives suspicion, who had great knowledge in Necromancy, and often by her skill crossed his practices, and withal unwilling to be guilty of my blood; after I was delivered to him, he brought me to this place, casting charms upon me, that I shall never be released, and when he had done, he told of *Amphiadoz*'s practice against me. I then entreated him to release me, promising to fulfill whatsoever *Amphiadoz* had

had promised him, but nothing could prevail, for he told me he had by a solemn oath bound him to perform, which he could not break, for if he did, by that he should lose the vertue of his art. Then did I lament my misfortunes with bitter exclams, but he told me it was in vain, and so departed; here did I live many years past hope of all Comfort, thinking to end my days in this place without ever hearing of them again; but at last *Penthesilus* came to me again, rehearsing the sequel of this History following.

Amphiador being sure enough of me; returned to my Castle, and coming to *Alfala*, told her that the day after I went from thence, *Palladius* had set upon me with an Ambush of men, and so slain me, telling the same with such protestations and probability of truth, that she could not chuse but believe him, counselling her in secret to apprehend him, and cast him in Prison. *Alfala* hearing this, had much ado to keep life within her, having scarce breath enough to command her servants to apprehend him whilst *Amphiador* laboured with such as were about her to keep life in her.

The rumour of my death was soon spread abroad, and my servants believing the same; some posted to the Court some searching for my body, none finding me alive or dead, for which *Amphiador* had still an answer ready to satisfy any doubt. *Palladius* hearing that it was *Amphiador* accused him, & for no less matter than my death (as he might well) denied the same, and often entreated *Alfala* to let him be brought to his tryal. But being over-swayed by *Amphiador*'s perswasions, and being before troubled with his love whereby he sought to dishonour me that was his friend, which bred a perswasion in her that to attain that, he sought my life, and would give no credit to him, but he should dye, & within few days, after, she apparelled her self, her Servants, and all her Attendants in mourning weeds, and departing to the Court craved justice of the King against *Palladius* for murdering me. The King told her she should have justice; whereupon *Palladius* was brought before the King, and there accused by *Amphiador*; he alledging all the false accusations he could, and the other still pleading his innocency, that in the end *Amphiador* desired the King to grant

him a Combat against *Pallatus*, which should end the doubt of all the controversie: so the King granted it; and appointed a day for the Tryal: in which violent combat, cruel fortune so ordered the issue: that *Pallatus* was slain, and all men accounted him guilty and me dead, yielding much honour to *Amphiado*, and the King in recompence of his supposed loyalty to me, and for that I dyed without an Heir, created him Duke of *Ila*, yet reserving the Living to *Alfala* during her life: this done, *Alfala* returned towards *Ila*, and *Amphiado* with her very sore wounded; of whom she had a special care, tending him as her self for the love he had shewed her in becoming her Champion in revenge of my death. After he had recovered his wounds, he continued many days with her, not once mentioning any love to her, seeming with her to lament my loss: but all things in time were out of mind, so did her sorrow for me, and she began to conceive well of him, which he perceiving did prosecute his love with such success, that in the end he married her: which when *Penthasus* declared to me it struck my heart with deadly grief, then I desired him to release me from this misery. Neither (said *Penthasus*) do I intend to claim the performance of *Amphiado*s promise, for *Philotheta* is fair, chaste, and vertuous, neither will I reveal this secret to any but your self; nor shall you depart from hence till the time of the Enchanted Tower be ended, built by *Helson*, in which he hath shut *Constantia* Daughter to the Emperor of *Persia*; and betrothed wife to *Persicles* King of *Assyria*, who shall be the first Knight that shall arrive in this place, neither shall the Enchantment be ended by any but the Son of *Persicles* begotten of *Constantia*; for (quoth he) the date of my life is at an end, and at such time as *Persicles* arriveth here, will him to return into *Assyria* to establish his Kingdom in peace; for it will be in vain for him to spend his days in travel to redeem her, the finishing whereof must be by his own Son. When he had spoken these words he vanished, appointing me to a certain bound which I cannot pass, nor any yet come into but only your self, which assureth me that you are *Persicles*, and Travel in search of *Constantia*.

You have (said *Persicles*) filled my heart with fear, hope, and comfort, the one striving to overcome the other; fear that the Enchanter

Enchanter dissimbled, for that I have as yet no Son, nor never shall have by Constantia; for she being still enchanted, how shall I attain her company? yet again, I am somewhat comforted that he could as well tell who should finish the Enchantment he had made, as my coming to this place, for I am the most sorrowful King of Assyria that shall never enjoy comfort till she be released, which doubt peradventure will never be; for if I must now return into Assyria, how shall I hope to find comfort? Yet he of good comfort (quoth he) for hope hath preserved my life many years, assuring my self, that Penthrasus told me nothing but truth: why should you despair more then I, since both our comforts rest on her release? But according to his counsel travel no further, for it were in vain to do that which can yield no hope of comfort.

In doing so (said he) I shall dishonour my self, & leave my friend unkindly, whose desires hath bound my life, to requite his love, whoso hath only for my sake undertaken to travel in search of Constantia, the cause of whose departure from me, was in search of your daughter Philotheta, that is reputed to be Daughter to Amphiadore, who was this day taken from Ila, by three Giants, then he declared how they came to the knowledge thereof.

It did him good to hear that she was living, so that he rejoiced greatly thereat; withal, enquiring of him what Knight that was who was gone in her rescue. Persicles then said, it were too tedious to make recital of him, for then I should rehearse the discourse of my misfortunes. Were it not troublesome (quoth the Duke) I would desire to hear them. To requite your kindness, (said he) I will rehearse the same, which yet I have kept from all men but Montelion: with that he declared all from the beginning of his first love to that hour, which when he heard he wondered who that Knight Montelion should be.

The night being spent in this discourse, and bright Phebus shining on the Desert, he knew not what was best, either to depart or stay; but at last being persuaded by Delatus, he took his leave of him with many courteous farewells, and mounting himself on horseback, he departed directly towards the Kingdom of Assyria.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of a Combat Montelion fought against three Gyants : And how he rescued Philotheta, and what befel them in the Hermits Cell.

Montelion being parted from Persicles, halted with more than ordinary pace after Philotheta, and overtook them about the setting of the evening, running at the hindermost with so fierce a Career, that he overtook him with his heels upwards, and was charging so violently against the second, that had he not avoided the point of his Lance, he had seconded his fellow. Then he that was overthrowen went towards Montelion, offering such a forcible blow at him, that had he not spurred his Steed to avoid him he had either slain him or his Horse : But Montelion knowing it better to fight on foot than on horse back alighted ; whilst the Gyant came towards him again, thinking at one blow to beat him in pieces ; the other two seeing him on foot, went away laughing ; but the Gyant missing his aim by reason of Montelion's nimbleness, was ready to turn about with the force of his blow ; in which time Montelion leaped within him and thrust his sword so far into his body that he fell down dead. The other seeing that, one of them came running back to rescue him, whom Montelion soon espyed, being ready to receive him. The Gyant seeing his fellow dead thought at one blow to end Montelion's life, that he struck at him with all his force, but he avoided his blow, not yet daring to come within him until he was somewhat out of breath, being furious for revenge, but more mad to miss so many blows, he struck so full and violently at Montelion that his mally Club stuck in the earth, and whilst he laboured to pull it out, Montelion struck him so full a blow on the arm, that he cut the same quite off, where he gave such a groan that all the place rung with the noise thereof running away as fast as he could towards Montelion's Horse whom he affrighted so much with his grisly and blustering approach, that he brake in sunder the reins of his bridle and ran away with great swiftness : Montelion was exceedingly vexed for lack of his Horse, not knowing for what of him what to do, and by reason of the night

nights approach he still pursued the Gyant, keeping him in sight as long as he could, whom at last he lost. Seeing himself so disappointed, and unhorsed, he began to study what to do, at last being past hope of finding them or his Steed, by reason of the darkness of the night, he went wandring up and down to seek a place of rest, lest some wild beast might devour him; coming to a Wood with a purpose to pass through the same, he heard the sound of a big voice, which made him stand still and listen, and with softly steps, drawing thitherwards, he perceived it was the Gyants, who did curse and ban him for crossing their journey. What shall we do (quoth one of them) shall we stay here or no? Wile shall wander I know not whither; A plague on that white Devil that haunted us; I am sure he is no man, for we are men; and one man should be as good in fight as another: but you two like cowardly slakes have suffered such a wretch to have the advantage of you. Hold thy prattling (said the other) thou couldest have done no more than we: Thou needest not ber me I am vered enough with the loss of my arm, let us rest here till day, and then we will be gone, for he hath work enough to find his horse. Philotheta was so affrighted with fear, that she lay like one in a Trance to whom one of them said: Sweet Philotheta be not offended with me, for I have loved thee long, and long expected this happy hour to enjoy thee, be content to lodge on the cold earth one night for my sake who have lost many a nights sleep for shine, neither shalt thou lie on the earth, for my body shall be thy bed, whilst my arms embrace thee; then did he take her in his arms, bestowing many a loathsome kiss upon her, but she for fear durst not cry out. Montelion stood and heard all their unrepent usage, wishing it were day, that he might revenge their disloyalty. They had not lain long, but one and then another fell fast a sleep, which he knew by their snoring, thinking it no discredit to slaughter such Miscreants that delighted in no Knightly action, but in wrong and oppression; and drawing near unto them, Philotheta espied him, and by reason of his white Armour knew him, desirous she was to speak to him, but being fearful to awake her keeper which held her, and yet she knew the sake of her affright hindred him from revenge, at last so boldly as she durst, she lifted her hand and beckoned Montelion to her, and

and pointing to the Giant. He understanding her meaning thrust his sword into him, that had her solied in his arms, who striding with the pangs, she had the liberty to leap from him, roaring forth such a groan as all the Wood sounded therewith, and his fellow being half amazed, started up ready to run away, but Montelion's sword overtook his hindermost leg, at one blow he cut in sunder the sinews, and he fell down holding up his hands for mercy, but with the next blow he pierced his brains, so that he dyed a most miserable death.

The other had received no mortal wound, for the point of his sword lighting upon one of his ribs, was stayed from ending his life, who whilst Montelion was slaughtering the other, had recovered his staff, bending a full blow at Montelion, who by good fortune and Philotheta's shriek turned about, and espying the same coming, broke half the force, and running in withal ran his sword quite up his body, but with the bruise he received fell down himself into a trance.

Philotheta thinking he had been dead, run to him with speed, striding with her tender hand to unbuckle his Beaver, and unlace his helmet to give him breath; which though long, yet at last she attained, but seeing him bereft of his senses, her lamentations were such as would have turned revenge into remorse, and those senseless trees into pity, and the birds hearing her moan left off their sweet notes to listen to her mournful plaint, which she began after this manner: Alas, what will now become of me? how shall I escape further misery? here am I left alone ready to be devoured of wild Beasts, yet what need I fear any mischief, when so great a misery hath befallen me, as greater cannot be? her laments conducted the steps of an aged hermit that dwelt in those Woods, to the place where she lay weeping over Montelion, and being half affrighted said, If thou art a man pity me, help me to revive this Knight. If thou beest a Ghost, think not to affright me, for I am already full of fear, and if thou beest neither, then tell me what thou art. Damsel (said he) fear not, for I am a living creature as thou art, I pity thy distress, and will do my best to help you. And kneeling down by Montelion, rubbing his cheeks and laying his hand upon his breast, felt some sign of life in him, looking for an herb, which presently he found;

he bruised the same, letting the juice fall into his nostrills, with the vertue whereof his vital senses returned to their former operations and his eyes received their sight. With that, raising himself upon his arm he said: I perceive I have troubled you, and (as it were half ashamed of himself) he desired her not to be disquieted at his misfortunes. Philotheta's heart rejoiced to see him revived, not so well knowing what to say, now he was revived, as when he was in his trance: but her vertue and his desert constraining her, she could do no less than utter these speeches: Sir Knight, your courtesie being so far beyond my desert, bindeth me to yield you thanks, and thanks is an unsufficient requital for your pains, although I know you not, nor never saw you until this day, yet your valour and courtesie in delivering me from captivity, hath bound me to become grateful, and desireth more recompence than I am able to yield. Lady (said Montelion) the Heavens have assisted you, not my valor, which I have attempted without expectation of recompence; if you think well of my pains, it is all the reward I crave.

The old Hermit perceiving some strange accident had brought them thither, desired them, (Montelion being very sore bruised, and she much affrighted and disquieted) to accept of his Cell, to repose in, untill they could take better order for their safety. Montelion thanked him, saying, he was pleased, so it liked the Lady: with that they began to go; but Montelion by reason of his sore bruise, with much ado could stand. The Hermit taking him by the arm, supported him, whilst he with grief that his misfortunes had brought him to such a low estate, said: It ill becometh youth to be supported by age, but no man can prevent destiny. Philotheta offered to lend him an arm, but he desired her not to trouble her self. Sir (said the Hermit) refuse not her courtesie, for in time of need it is not good to be too curious. With that she lent him her arm, but he took her hand, and that he thought as much boldness as it was a trouble, striving against the weakness he had received by his bruise, to go upright; she likewise wondered that nature had wrought in her such a familiar regard towards him she knew not: often accusing her self of lightness, and blushed when he grasped her tender hand, that with exceeding fear, and fancies striving, moistened her palm; thinking with

her self: now is my estate altered, that to day was free from care, now suddenly brought to bondage, and from bondage to this disquiet, and all in a moment; I am now like one that am content with misery; and yet discontented with that content: I could wish my self from hence, and yet were I gone, I should wish my self here again, because I desire this Knights welfare, and yet methinks I should not be too familiar, and yet I know he hath deserved more courtesie than I can proffer. Many such thoughtes possessed her fancy, that and other things for her part shortning the way to the Cell, where being arrived the Hermit gave Montelion a portion of commixed Drugs, which comforted him greatly, and Philotheta a cup of Greekish Wine, which revived and quickened her affrighted heart. There was no light in the room, therefore as yet, neither of them had seen each other: Montelion wished the day might appear that he might behold her beauty, and she, that she might behold whether his person were agreeable to his promises, and the Hermit desirous to see what guile he had entertained. Seeing them both silent, the one obtained for grief, the other for modesty, after he had leaved them on soft Kishes, he said: As it seems to me, you are strangers one to another, which makes me desirous to know what accident hath befallen you: Riches (said he) indeed we are so, for as yet I never saw this Ladies beauty; yet I know her name is Philotheta Daughter to the Duke of Ila; which knowledge I got by this means: As I and another Knight were travelling in search of a Lady who hath been long time missing, we chanced to espy two Damoisels clad in white, passing us with great speed, with whom I had conference, and they told me, that this Lady was taken away from them by three Giants; I returned to my friend with this news, and we both passed after them untill at a cross-way we parted, that if they went either way we should overtake them, but it was my good fortune to light on them, and by their beauty to see the Lady, thinking my valour well bestowed, to redeem her from their treachery.

Philotheta refrained to speak, and only thanked him, fearing she should seem more courteous than modesty would permit, or more coy than became required. Sir, (said the Hermit) I know these Giants, and the manner of their life to be most inhumane and wicked.

wicked, whose habitation is not far off in the Desert of Arabia, by whose death this Country is freed from much outrage, which they dayly committed. Sir (said Montelion) I pray what Country is this? It is Arabia (quoth he) Dost not Helion reign as King here? Sir (replied he) he did reign as King: but whether he is now living or no it is doubtful: Some say he is Enchanted in a Tower he built himself, situate not far off; from whence he cannot be released until the Enchantment be ended, which many Knights of strange Countreys have adventured, but none can finish; the cause of building thereof, no man as yet can tell. Philotheta having heard before thereof, and wearied with that dayes travel, whilst they were in communication, fell asleep, whilst Montelion perceiving, ceased conference till morning, being unwilling to wake her with their noise. The first that awaked was the Hermit, who went to gather certain Herbs, leaving them both sleeping, who both at once awaked at the first blushing at each others sight, he wondering at her exceeding beauty, and she at his exquisite person; he comparing the Damocles report of her beauty, and her other gifts thereto, which he supposed beyond conceit, and she comparing his valor to his much goodly countenance with both, thought her eyes never beheld you, standing as it were enchanted with each other, neither able to withhold their eyes from each other, but noting each others behaviour, untill Montelion arose, and she did the like, he first breaking silence, said: Fair Lady; now that the Sun hath banished the misty Clouds of the night, you need not fear any mishap, for your enemies being dead, I think there is none living of so inhumane a disposition, as would disquiet you; for my self, my life, and all I have resteth at your command. Sir Knight (said she) I thank you for your kindness past and now proffered, which hath rid me from that I was in and out of fear of other mishaps to come, for your virtue hath authority against any wicked action. Before any further speeches past, the Hermit came, bringing in his hand the Herbs he had gathered, some of which he stamped and strained, giving it Montelion to drink, others he boiled on the fire, making thereof a dainty dish, which when they had tasted, the Hermit said: Though I know you are of sufficient strength, yet by my counsel travel not this

day, for you may impair your health, my self, if it pleaseth this Lady, will send a Messenger to Ila to report her safety, (Not so (quoth Montelion) my self, if it please her to accept of my service, will attend her thither, and that presently.. Sir (quoth she) I would not have you endanger your health for my sake that am in safety, till such time as you are perfectly recovered. Then, said the Hermit, you shall not in this place want any thing; nor fear disquiet, for here hath security dwelt many years, my self being glad that my poor Cell can yield you any content. Then he went forth to get provision, leaving them together in his Cell, whose eyes were filled with a surfeiting surdy of each others presentations. Her beauty being such as might not be equalled to any, and his proportion, besides his youths beauty, and other comeliness, of such form as would please any Ladies eye: which view conducted an instinct of love into each others heart, where it settled in that vertuous Harbor with such constancy, that it was impossible to be removed, neither daunting the other fortunate as to agree in such a sympathy of love, he thinking he should not love, and she perswaded her self that he had settled his love upon that Lady he went in search of; he not knowing which way to frame his suit on so small acquaintance, nor the how to shew him love, on for further tryal.

Philotheta breaking silence, with a heavy sigh bred from the depth of meditation, he took occasion to say: Lady, that sigh bewrayeth some disquiet of mind that molesters you, the occasion whereof my small acquaintance and unworthiness to be so bold, hindereth me from asking; but if you would yield me such favour, as to impart your secrets to me, I should probe so fastidull and diligent to please you, that you would not condemn my willingness, though my ability, for my heart withereth my tongue to utter that which my fancy perswades me from, nor for that they disagree, but for that my heart harbourerth that which my fancy binds me not to utter, because I fear you will not believe it: and yet you might believe if it were of more antiquity; for it is commonly holden for truth, that all things of antiquity are permanent; but never would have been, if they had not first begun in youth: youth being the first foundation, the foundation is then constant, then things, though young of growth, contain constant

which being cherished, grow to perfection: so, Lady, if I might without your misconceit discover the constant zeal of your perfections, that is rooted in my heart; and find some sparks of your gentle labour to comfort it, it would grow to that settled resolution that nothing should remove it: but if in the first spring it be blasted with dislabour, it will then spread it self into all parts of my senses, torturing every part of me untill it be cherished with your kindness. I cannot protest, vow or swear that I have loved long, yet if your suspect convert not the truth of my well-meaning words into distrust, I durst protest, vow, and swear that love to your perfections is settled in my heart, and nothing can remove it.

Sir (said she) should I credit your words, or impart my secrets to you, it might be counted too much credulity; yet without blame I might, relying upon your virtues; or should I grant it were as you say, that love began in a moment, being the root is the substance, and therefore permanent; yet how should you think of me, if on so small probability I should thank you for your good will, and accept thereof not measuring me by your self: if you are constant, but measuring me by unconstancy, you would judge me but light as I may judge your words of course: yet so much good will as may grow upon so small acquaintance I bear you, measuring the same by your own; for if you find cause to love me, I have more cause to thank you for your love, than I have received good by you: but neither esteem me light for being so familiar, or easie to be won, because I am courteous; for should I be coy, you would count me unmannerly, and not worthy to be assisted as I have been by you.

Lady (quoth Montelion) should I harbour a thought that might impeach the least title of your compleat Vertue, I were worthy to be hated; for I know that truth is plain, and needeth no coloured phrases of curiosity, which animaterh me to enter into this bold conference with you; not framing my words of course, but of true devotion; trusting that your vertue will pardon my boldness, and your courtesie censure my meaning aright, for I find in my self an unwonted alteration, which desires to be gracious in your sight have bred in me (Nature, not Art framing it) which I neither know how to manifest, nor dare, by reason of this small acquaintance; though my soul knoweth my hearts purity.

purity and concept thereunto fearing to be misconceived of you, but if you will vouchsafe to make repal of me, and grant me but to be your Servant, in time to be censured and tryed according to my truth, I shall account my self most fortunate, and yet hope may be the anchor of my comfort, one day to be gracious in your sight. Sir (said she) how could I but blame my self if I should yield you any other labour than for your late pains, which shall bind me to requite it to my power; but Love bring another subject, how should I give you any credit being a stranger, altogether unknown to me? Lady (said he) you may do it, if your gentle heart will yield thereunto, though I am both a stranger, and to my self unknown, for that I am you can witness, but who are my Parents, the Heavens have concealed; my name if you ever heard of Montelion, my cause of my coming into this Country was with Persicles King of Assyria, in search of Constantia Daughter to the Emperour of Persia his betrothed Wife, by misfortune lost many years since. All that I know of my self I have told you, and would I had never known my self, unless you favour me. Philotheta remembered that Amphiadore in reciting the Wars between Persicles and the King of Armenia, had made ample report of his valour, so much the more esteeming him, yet he concealed the same, thinking though he were never so valiant, yet he might be unconstant, making him this answer. Sir, because you shall not accuse me of discourtesie, I will not deny your suit, nor in any respect grant it, till more convenient time to make tryal thereof. Neither shall you name your self my Servant, for you have deserved to be better rewarded, which hereafter you shall find. Lady (quoth he) only one favour absolutely granted, would now more comfort my heart, that many in silence, not that I misdoubt your performance, but the long lingering pain in the mean time will pinch my heart, therefore without misdoubt of truth, gratitude, and constancy, enrich me but with one, though the least comfortable answer. Sir (quod she) what in vertue I can grant, I will yield you, though you may account me already prodigal in favour, and gentle in reply; yet should I be ungrateful you may blame me, or too prolix you may condemn me, but as much good will as in so short a time may be, I bear you, and you shall find me perdy, for my heart would

never

never suffer till this, to conceive so well of any as I do of you. In urging me further, you will make me mistrust your consideration of my late misfortune, rather willing me to regard my return to my Parents: But you may see how my virtues have overmastered my mistrust, and my good opinion of you have made me trust my self in your custody.

C H A P. XXIV.

How Amphiadore arrived at the Cell, and of the fear Philotheta was in. The displeasure that arose between Montelion and Amphiadore, and of Philotheta's strange departure.

When he had ended those words, the Hermit came in, which brake off their communication, telling him that Amphiadore with many followers were entered the Wood where the Giants lay dead. Philotheta then thought all was past; but remembering she must part from Montelion, her heart fainted with grief, and she was exceedingly troubled: For she knew well that Amphiadore was rude and suspicious, that he would not thank him, nor invite him to his Castle: he having formerly disgraced others that sought her Love. Montelion on the other side studied what means to use to enjoy her company; and yet he thought it a dishonour to him to follow Labe, and leave Pericles in search of Constantia, and the knowledge of his Parents. But to rid them both out of their troubled thoughts, there entered three Knights in great Armour, and without speaking a word, two of them took Philotheta, and handed her forth of the Cell. Montelion starting up, drew his Sword, and followed to rescue her: but she fled without speaking, struck at him, whereunto he began a cruel Combat. At last the Green Knight said: Thou strikest in vain, she is past recovery. While that Montelion looking about, saw them quite out of sight, murthering they could so suddenly convey her thence. If thou wilt find her (quoth he) thou must seek her amongst the Hesperian Nymphs; which said, he rode away so swiftly, that Montelion did think it in vain to follow him. By this time Amphiadore and his company was come to him, amongst whom he espied one leading

his Steed unto whom he went, and said : Sir, this is my Steed, I pray you deliver him to me. The fellow denying him, he struck him a good blow with his fist, and overthrew him. Amphiador seeing that, said : What art thou that so boldly strik'st my servant ? Montelion being vexed with the loss of Philotheta, answered, I will not tell thee. Amphiador being likewise vexed at his scornfulness, said no more, but drew his sword and struck at him. Montelion thought to revenge it, but suddenly remembering himself, said : Wert thou not father to Philotheta, I would make thee repent thy self. Amphiador hearing him name Philotheta, would have spoke to him again ; but Montelion mounting his Steed, rode away.

The Hermit seeing them at such variance, came to Amphiador, giving him knowledge of all that had hapned. But he thinking it was some coloured excuse for her escape, caused his servant to bind him, intending by tortures to make him confess more than he could. Montelion remembering himself, when he had rode a good way, how ungratefully he had left his kind host the Hermit, returned to give him thanks ; which he had no sooner done, but he found him bound amongst Amphiador's men, which vexed him so much, that he drew his sword again, and set upon them, wounding some, and killing others, that therewith Amphiador drew his sword and struck at him again. By heaven (quoth Montelion) Strike me the third time, and thou dyest. Notwithstanding his words, Amphiador bent for the death of his servants, struck him again ; whereupon Montelion not only defended himself ; but offended him so much that he sore wounded him ; and had not his servants with some of their sides boyn off some blows, he had ended his life : but notwithstanding all their endeavours, he left him in such a miserable condition, that his servants had much ado to keep life in him until they brought him home.

C H A P. XXV.

How Montelion in his travel arrived at the Bower of the Hesperian Nymphs; how every one of them gave him a several gift, and how they named him Knight of the Oracle.

HAVING freed the Hermit, and yielded him many thanks for his kindness, he departed with so heavy a heart, that he could hardly speak for grief; travelling he knew not whither, having so many occasions of care, he knew not what to do, nor which way to direct his steps. All the rest of that day he rode forth in this dismal state lost, untill it grew to be Night, neither caring for Meat or Lodging; but turning his Horse loose to feed, he laid himself down under an Oak, whose spreading branches were as a large Canopy over his head, clogged with so many cares, that his heart was dulled with their confusion, and his senses so over-grown with conceit, that they rocked him into a deep sleep, in the midst whereof he suddenly awaked, and being called by a Damoel that appeared unto him, who standing before him, said: Sir Knight, arise and follow me. He marveling what she should be, arose and followed her, she leading him the way (as he thought) through many by-paths, and cross-ways, hills, dales, and Woods; untill the Sun arose; then vanishing out of his sight, she left him in the midst of a pleasant green Meadow, beautified with all sorts of fresh blown flowers, whose beauty delighted the eye, and sweet smell affected the senses, and looking about him he espied it encompassed with Springs, Trees, Groves; and in the midst of an Arbour of blowing Roses, made with such art, that he admired the same, and the floor strewn with Rushes, and all sorts of flowers: he stood a while in admiration, and casting his eye aside, he espied a Table with these Verses written thereon.

What e're thou art that shalt behold his writ,
Abstain from coming into this sacred place,
A Company of comely Nymphs here sit,
That rule the Hesperian Oracle of Grace.

Be not too bold, lest thou repent too late
Thy rash attempt, and hard Divining Fate.

Which when he had read, he stood in a deep study, arguing their ambiguity, then suddenly he heard the sound of most sweet music drawing near him, and turning about, he espied a troop of Damozels attired in most rich ornaments, with Garlands of Roses, mixed with siber's coloured Flowers upon their heads; some playing upon Instruments, others having in their hands a Bow, and at their back a heap of Arrows: amongst them there was three taller, more beautiful, and richly adorned than the rest, wearing Crowns of Palm; among whom he espied the Damozel that brought him thither, which made him with more boldness stay their coming.

They passed by him continuing their Melody, until they came within their Pavilion: then two of them came forth, saluting him with courteous and gentle behaviour, leading him to the Pavilion until he came to the place where they were all seated, and the three chief in the midst. Montelion disarming his head, did them reverence on his knee, and then presently he heard a voice uttering these speeches:

Most noble Knight, The Nymphs of the Hesperian Oracle pitying thy care and troubles, have brought thee hither to comfort thee with our assistance; unto which place never any man was yet admitted, therefore reveal not to any what thou hast seen: with thy Sword maintain their honour, and name thy self Knight of the Oracle: Thy Parentage is Noble, thy Father not knowing he hath a Son, and your Mother not thinking to see either Father or Son: Thy fortune shall be good, thy misfortune great, that which thou lovest best shall trouble thee most, and what thou thinkest thy self nearest, thou shalt be furthest off, thy professed friends, thy greatest foes: Thou wert begotten in Persia, born in Arabia, and brought up in Africa. Be constant in Love, true to thy friends, patient in misery, and lowly in prosperity: Farewel, and be both happy and fortunate. The Voice ceasing, the Nymphs came round about him, one ungirding his Sword, another unlacing his Helmet, and the third unbuckling his Armour, others unlacing of his Gamblets, and every one busy to disarm him; this done, one of the chiefest of them presented him
with

with a most curious rich Armour, wrought of the best and purest Lydian Steel, enamelled all over with green, and beset with Diamonds, Sapphires, Jaspers, and Rubies, the like for strength and richness never Knight possessed, then the second gave him a Shield agreeable thereto, with this Device thereon, A Knight kneeling, encompassed with Nymphs crowning him with a wreath of Roses; and underneath these words written in Letters of Gold, The Knight of the Oracle: The third presented him with a rich Sword, which he girded on his side, another a pair of Gauntlets, another a Plume, another a Spear, another a pair of Spurs, and every one something to express their kindness: When he was thus adorned, which made him most beautifull to behold, every one of them gave him a courteous farewell, and departed again the same way they came from the Grove. Then the Damsel that brought him thither came to him, and said: Sir Knight, The Ladies of this Oracle, pitying the hard adventures you are to undertake, have bestowed these Arms on you, which shall oftentimes preserve your life; and have honoured you so much as to chuse you for their Knight: they have also appointed me to bring you to the place where I found you; therefore let us depart, my self will give you a Horse, whose equal for goodness cannot be had: which said, she led the way, and he followed after, until they came to the Castle, into which the Damsel entered, willing he to stay till she returned, leading in her hand a Horse black of colour, but of such a goodly proportion, that his eyes never beheld the like before; and mounting himself, the Damsel said unto him: Knight of the Oracle, farewell, prosper and be fortunate: which she had no sooner spoken, but presently she vanished from his sight, before he could have respice to give her thanks for her courtesie: being parted from her, he entered into these Meditations, which shoynd the way as he rode along.

I have lost the noble Knight Persicles, who by this time accuseth me of discourtesie for not finding him but; how can I do that when I have lost my self and Philotheta; and in her my essence, being and substance; which of these are dearest to me, I know not, my self I love by nature, him for his honour, and her by affection, which then should I go in search of, since they are both so dear

unto me, as that I think my self departed of comfort by missing them; my estate is also uncertain, and the place where to find them so doubtfull, that I cannot assure my self of confidence in either, but must take my fortune as it falleth, and arm my self with patience to endure the hardest tryal of extreame: Then he began to study which way to trabel, being as ignorant of the place where Philotheta was, as unacquainted in those ways. Riding along in these solitary dumps, he at last lighted in a plain fair beaten path, in the furrows of whose dust he might perceiue the footing of Horses that had newly gone that way, which put him in comfort, that it would not be long before he should find some company.

He had not rode an hour, but he chanced to enter a way that ascended a high Mountain, whose lofty top discovered to his eye the fair Turrets of the Enchanted Tower, which glistered as if they had been framed of Massy Gold, which drave him into an admiration: and viewing well the situation thereof, he discerned the Valley round about overspread with Tents, as if it had been encompassed with an Host of enemies; and forsaking the gallant prospect, he intended to trabel thither to know the cause of that assembly, making the more haste, for that it grew towards night: ere he could attain thither it wared dark, therefore for that night he took his lodging under the covert of a Tuft of Trees, pleasantly seated in the midst of a green Meadow.

C H A P. XXVI.

Of the Conference between Philotheta and Constantia in Pen-
thasus's Palace.

THE History hath long discontinued to speak of Constantia that remained Enchanted, and Helion that lay there enchanted in great misery, rightly rewarded for his treacherous dealing. Her eyes continually shed tears for the absence of Persicles, on whom she continually meditated, resolving that nothing but death should abolish his remembrance, that had not the Enchantress comforted her with promises of her release, the extremity of her sorrow had ended her life; withall, thinking that

that Persicles and her young Son might be both in safety, and she by no means hear thereof, which added some comfort to her heavy heart. • The Enchantress would often intreat her to behold the valiant Adventures of noble Knights that hazarded their own persons in great peril to attain her love, and in private combats amongst themselves, with whom they were deeply affected only with the sight of her Picture; but she still refused it, accounting it no pleasure to her to see their misfortune, who spent their labour in vain, for in the continuance of so many years as she had been there enclosed, the same of her beauty was spread into most part of those Countries therabouts; and many thousand worthy Knights had been there to try their fortunes, but all failed: the recital whereof would be too tedious, but many of them lay there imprisoned by the Enchantress, who being now in despair of her own safety, thought to bring all to misery as well as her self.

At the same time that Philotheta was carried from Montelion in the Hermit's Cell, Constantia remained in such extremity of sorrow, that had not Ila wrought that device to bring Philotheta thither to accompany her, it would have been impossible her senses could have overcome the extremity of the passion that tormented her; but sitting alone in a dark corner, she uttered such lamentations as would have turned the hardest heart of a cruel Tyrant into remorse: but when she espied Ila entered, and with her so beautifull a Damoel, with cheeks bedewed with Crystal tears that in abundance trickled down from her eyes, with that object lest her own laments to pity hers; and seeing them draw nigh her, she rose after a sad sort saluting their approach. Ila without speaking a word to either, lest them together, and although they were women, yet they greatly admired each others beauty, the one thinking the other to excell all; and yet had they but beheld their own perfections, they would have found them such, that they might inwardly have conceited as well of themselves, as they did of the outward object.

Constantia being more familiar with sorrow than Philotheta was, first broke silence, saying: Lady, I perceive by your tears, that constraint (not consent) did bring you to this place, beautifull to the eye; but filled with discontent, which long experience

virtue hath taught me : Therefore if you want a companion in
 care, accept of my company ; but if you seek for comfort, abandon
 me, for my chiefest solace is sorrow, and my thoughts and med-
 itations are nothing but discontent. I have not (said Philotheta)
 been long subject to this misfortune ; but being now plunged
 therein, I know not how to release my self, or how to find the
 same : Neither knowing who is the cause thereof where I am, or
 when I shall be released, my sorrow being such, may well en-
 tertain a sorrowfull companion, accepting your proffered kindness
 with hearty thanks. Lady (said Constantia) as you vouchsafe
 me your company, so let me know what misfortune hath brought
 you hither, which will shorten some of the tedious time we are
 like to over-passe in this place : which done, you shall know to
 whom you have imparted your secrets, which refusal will be ri-
 diculous. Philotheta sitting down by her, uttered these speeches.
 My name is Philotheta, Daughter in Law to Amphiadore : and
 as I was walking, in my Fathers Garden, upon what pretence
 I know not, three Giants surprized me, by force carrying me
 thence, none to my knowledge seeing their cruelty. When they
 had travelled with me till it was late, a Knight armed all in
 habite, gallantly mounted, came to my rescue, and entered com-
 bat with one of them, his valiant heart not refusing to fight
 with them all three : but one of them (thinking himself too strong
 for him) stayed behind and fought him, the other two halting
 me away ; but in short space one of them ran back to rescue his
 fellow, but he suddenly returned with the loss of an Arm : Then
 they held me forward with a violent force, untill they came
 to the midst of a Wood, where they meant to stay all that night.
 This Knight, directed by fortune, alighted on the place where
 they lay, and by his valour and policy slew them both, yet was
 sore hurt himself, that he lay breathless on the earth, which
 afflicted my heart with sorrow fearing his death, for I could not
 comfort him with my lamentations, therefore accounted it my
 misfortune to be the cause of so worthy a Knights Death, that
 I had still been prisoner to those Monsters. The Hermit in-
 viting my sorrows, and his mishap, directed an old Hermit to
 a place, who with the juice of certain herbs recovered him, and
 my weak assistance brought him up to his Cell, within four

curing him: in which time I noted every part of his perfections, and found them such, as I want skill to decipher, comparing thereto his behaviour, which bred a persuasion in me, that as he was Pleasant, so he was Vertuous; and as he excelled all that ever I beheld in person, so he did in courtellie: much conference pass between us, which I omit, the subject whereof was Love, which he bowed to be as constant in him, though now begun, as it was in any by long continuance: amongst the rest of his speeches, he told me he knew not his parents: his name was Montecleon, the cause of his travel was in search of a Lady named Constantia, betrothed wife to Persicles King of Assyria, who parted from him that day he rescued me in Arabia. Constantia hearing such good news of the safety of Persicles, could not contain her self from betwaping what she was; but raising Philotheta by the hand, said: Dear Lady, this news addeth much comfort to my despairing heart; I am that unfortunate Constantia, who till this hour have despaired of ever seeing that Noble Knight again, accounting my self so much bound to you, for being the reporter of this Welcome News, that I protest my self your everlasting Friend, assuring you that if the Worthy Knight that rescued you, be companion with Persicles, he is endued with all Heroick qualities; but pray tell me out the rest. The Worthy Knight perceives (said she) wrought so effectually with me, that I could have been content to have lived there for ever with him: In the end, the Hermit brought in the News that Amphirado was hard by in my search: at which news I was very glad, yet also displeased, well knowing that his rude behaviour would not suffer him to use him kindly: whilst I was in this thought, three Knights in green Armour entred the Cell, two of them without speaking a word, by force carrying me away, whilst the third stayed the Knight in combat, who followed hastily to rescue me: but on a sudden, before I could bethink me what they should be, I was within this Garden, where I met her that brought me unto you, who bad me fear nothing, for here I should abide in safety. That a flood of tears gushed from her eyes, that it stopped the passage of her speech, turning the same into silence. Lady, (said Constantia) to add more care to my heart will over-whelm it with grief, therefore I will omit the relation of my Travels till

till another time, neither feeling nor fearing care, now I hear of my Lords safety, who will set me at liberty from the thraldom I have endured almost twenty years. He coming to them, brake off their conference; and after supper, conveyed them into a Chamber, where they both lay, continuing some days in conference of their estate.

C H A P. XXVII.

How Montelion (Knight of the Oracle) arrived at the Enchanted Tower called Penthafus's Palace; and of the Controversies that fell between him and the Knights that came to try the Adventures.

EARLY the next morning the Knight of the Oracle (having lodged all night in the Wood) mounted his Steed with a desire to know whose Tents those were, and what Tower they had encompassed; he had not rode half an hour but he approached near unto them, passing amongst them without stay. Because he met none to confer withall, he drew towards the entrance of the Bridge where Constantia's Picture hung; which when he beheld, he judged by the outward shew, what perfections were adherent to the Lady who was owner thereof, thereby calling to remembrance Philothea's perfections, which in his conceit far surpassed that, but yet the spell that Ha had cast thereon did work with him, that had not the vertue of his Armour and other gifts the Nymphs had bestowed on him (which had power to gain all enchantments preballed, he had surely doted thereon when he had read the Oracles, an earnest desire possessed his heart to redeem the Lady; but neither regarding danger, nor omitting opportunity, he took the Horn and winded the same; the sound thereof made many Knights to start from their Tents, being then up and newly armed. The first that was mounted and came to the Bridge, was a noble Knight of Parthia, named Menon, who calling to the Knight of the Oracle, said, Sir Knight, meet me further before thou know whom thou hast offended by thy bold intrusion: He hearing his words, turned his

saying, if I have offended, it is more than I know, yet I am resolved to try the Adventure whosoever says no. Thy strangeness (said Menon) both priviledge thee, because thou knowest not what is concluded amongst the Knights here assembled. Sir (quoth he) whatsoever agreement to the Laws of Arms I yield to, and whatsoever courtesie bindeth me to, I will perform, before I pass further. By this time he was encompassed with Armed Knights, and one of them named Linseus of Arabia, who thought himself too good for all, and had vanquished many that had combated with him, said: Before thou pass further thou must Combat with us; for the meanest that are here assembled, thinks himself able to perform as much as thee. The Knight of the Oracle wondering at their rudeness, and moved with his discourteous words said: I am not to be controlled by any, but stand free in my own choice to do what I think good, if thou, or any here, be offended with what I have said; or done, challenge me. I do challenge thee (said Linseus) and I (quoth Menon) and after him many others, every one desirous to deal with him first; then stepped forth the Prince of Parthia, named Nessus, saying: Fellow Knights, we being all professors of Arms, and every one a partner in this quarrel, let us cast Lots, and to whose share the Lot falls first, let him begin; and the rest follow, to which they agreed. The Knight of the Oracle thought he should not be idle, rejoicing that he had so good an occasion, to make tryal of his valor: the lot fell to Arnon of Persia to begin: the place a goodly plain, in the full view of the Tower, and the time was within an hour.

This being agreed upon, The Knight of the Oracle in the interim rode about the Tower, to behold the beauty and situation thereof; and casting up his eyes, he espied on the Battlements afar off three Ladies walking together, whom he could scarcely discern, much less known, if he had been acquainted with them. These Ladies were Constantia, Philotheta, and Ila, who came to behold the Tilts and Turneys that were daily acted between divers Knights before the Tower. Constantia hearing of Persicles's safety in that Country, hoping in time to be released, desired to see the Combats which before she refused to do. The Knight of the Oracle little thinking Philotheta had been

one of the three, after he had a while stood to behold them, he returned to the appointed place of Combat, where Arnon was then newly entered with great pride and the sound of Trumpets and a great number of followers, whom The Knight of the Oracle overthrew at the first encounter, to Arnon's amazement and his own glory. The next that encountered him was Linseus, who held out two courses, but at the third, both he and his horse lay on the ground, the Knights that beheld this commended his valour, yet envied his fortune. After he had encountered three stout Knights of Egypt; then came Nassus Prince of Parthia, thinking to recover what his Predecessors had lost, but his fortune proved so bad, that he lost both his stirrups, and had he not hung on the Saddle-bow, he had fallen to the Earth. The day by this time drew to an end, which caused them to remit any further trial till next morning. Constantia and Philotheta beholding the valour of this Knight, one judged it was Persicles, and the other to be Montelion, desiring Ila to send a Messenger to know his name, who returning, told them he was called, The Knight of the Oracle. Then it is not Persicles (said Constantia) No, nor Montelion (quoth Philotheta.) Their hearts now fainting with Care, that before were revived with Hope. The Knight of the Oracle that night lodged in the Tent of a Persian Knight named Thymus, who kindly invited him there to. Early in the next morning, he entered the field, being ready for him that should next encounter him, who came gallantly mounted: Having travelled many miles to try the adventure, but before he came to try himself therein, he received so great a charge by encountering The Knight of the Oracle, that in a desperate mood, and ashamed of the spoil, he departed the field.

The Knight of the Oracle being endued with an Excellent Wit, as receiving the essence thereof from two goodly Princes that he was sprung off, began in his mind to condemn the fondness of those Knights, that coming to make trial of the adventure spent their time in private quarrels, till omitting that they principally sought; his mind being troubled with the loss of Philotheta and Persicles, desired not to stay there, but to hasten in their search; therefore going towards the Knights, who were assembled on a heap, studying which way to work his disgrace,

disgrace, he said: Worthy Knights, my coming to this place was not to try my fortune against you, but in the Adventure, and your private envy hath hindred me, not regarding into what private quarrels you enter, and causelessly trouble me that have not offended you, therefore because business of more importance than to answer your envy, doth urge my departure, I wish you not to fear my ability to answer you, but to remit this private contention till another time: and if any of you enviously condemn me or repine at my good fortune, I will be ready to answer your several quarrels in Persia, at the time that is appointed for the meeting of the Kings of Assyria and Armenia; for the cause of your approach being to release the Ladies imprisonment, weaken not your force in private contention, for in the trial of it, you will find occasion enough to exercise your arms. Hearing his words they agreed thereto, but yet contended who should try the adventure first: In the end they agreed to cast Lots and the last fell to The Knight of the Oracle, every one having a days respite for the finishing thereof.

Thus did they make trial of themselves, some with much labour attaining the Bridge, but then forced by the virtue of Enchantment to yield, and so were imprisoned in inalienable sort by Ila, who desired the Enchantment might never end, and others with fear run away. Many days it was before it came to The Knight of the Oracle's turn; in the end, all being fled or imprisoned, he alone was left to try his fortune, neither having friend to succour him, foe to envy him, or any to behold him; for the Enchantress had made such desolation amongst the Tents, by casting fire amongst them, that all the Servants of those Knights fled as amazed, reporting from place to place their Masters misery; Yet all this did not discourage The Knight of the Oracle, but he rested as resolute to go forwards, as if there had been no danger in the attempt.

Constantia seeing how many Knights were at that instant imprisoned, all their Tents destroyed, and no man as she thought left, began to discomfit her self, utterly despairing of release, desiring Ila to let her view the Lots that were imprisoned, fearing Persicles being there; but her requests were in vain, for Ila fretted with extream fear of the end of her Enchantment,

chantment; in a mad rage flung from them studying which way to lengthen the date thereof, which tormented both Constantia and Philotheta, with great grief of farther calamity.

C H A P. XXVIII.

How The Knight of the Oracle finished the Enchantment; and how Illa departed with Philotheta.

BEfore bright Phoebus that morning could shew her Splendent Beams, The Knight of the Oracle was up, viewing the Situation of the Bridge; to see which way he might advantage himself or disadvantage his Foe, and winding the Horn, there was an exceeding earth-quake within the Tower; that the Foundation thereof shook; and one of the Giants came running forth, without speaking a word, striking at him, but he defended himself a great while on horse-back, untill the Giant pressed so hard upon him that he was forced to dismount; and thereupon again assailed him, giving him many a deep cut, and receiving many a sore bruise, that had not his Armour preserved him, he had dyed, but in the end, he prevailed so much by the Death of the first Giant, that he attained the first and second Fortification of the Bridge; and at the third he was so violently set upon by the other Giant, that he was only compelled to ward his blows, but espying a broken place in his Armour, he thrust his Sword quite through his body, by which means, he entered the first large Court, where he beheld the Armour of such Knights as had failed in the Adventure.

Illā knowing that the date of the Enchantment would not end, in furious sort came running to the place where Constantia and Philotheta were, taking Philotheta with violence out of the Arbor; and by force of her Enchantment compelled her to follow her untill she came to the Court, where The Knight of the Oracle was: He suddenly beholding Philotheta, at the first sight knew her, and seeing them pass by, towards the entrance, he arrester them to speak to her, but suddenly rushed upon him a

number of Armed Men, that laid upon him with such swiftness, that he had no power to stir from the place where he stood; then suddenly vanishing, he stood amazed at the sight, and perplexed with such doubt, that he could not tell what to do, sometimes thinking to follow Philotheta, then perswading himself it was but an illusion, and thinking to cast off that doubt, and go forwards, his mind was possessed with such desire to see her again, that he stood like a man without sense, and suddenly such a mist darkened the place, that he could scarce see his hands, continuing for the space of an hour: whilst he remained in these cogitations, sometimes of perswasion it was he, which troubled his heart to think what should become of her, that he seemed to have lost his senses: remaining in many meditations, the mist vanished, and the Sun shining disclosed the beauty of that most stately Palace: when he saw no further expectation of danger appear, he entered further, towards the three Gates of Brass, beholding the curious works thereof through which he entered into the Court, which drew his mind in great admiration thereof, and entering the Hall, beheld the two Lyons that kept the passage: which with a fair prospect discovered the beauty of the Garden. The Lyons no sooner espied him, but they presently kept such a roaring noise that all the Palace rung thereof, and Constantia hearing the same, cryed out as exceedingly affrighted. The Knight of the Oracle attempted to pass by them, expecting neither but cruel resistance, but contrary to his thought, they laid themselves down at his feet as it were reverencing him: which he beholding, of his own inclination loosed both their Chains, which when he had done, they ran out of the Palace with great swiftness. Passing through the Hall, he entered the Garden, looking round about him to behold the beauty thereof: and suddenly he began to wonder that he had not beheld either Man, Woman, or Child, since he entered, which caused exceeding admiration in him, marvelling greatly, that he could not behold the Lady whose Picture he beheld at the entrance, so finding himself over-wearied with Labor, purposing to rest himself, entered into the Hall, and seated himself in a rich and costly Chair.

Constantia being in an Arbor, beheld him enter the Garden, and

and when he went back, marvelling what he should be and lastly, thinking the enchantment was ended, not daring to go out of the Arbor, her heart was so oppress'd with amazement, that she desired one of the Damosels to see who he was, and learn the cause of that uproar they heard in the Palace. One of the Damosels being more hardy than the other, said. That for the love she bore her she would adventure, though she lost her life. Passing on towards the Palace which hasty steps, as if some body had pursued her and going forwards as if an evil had been before her, that she could not tell whither, wherefore, nor why she went untill on a sudden she mounted the passage into the Hall, and was right before the Knight of the Oracle, whom when she saw, she stood looking upon him with great amazement, whilst he said unto her: Damosel fear not, I will defend you from danger, here is none intends you harm. The Damosel hearing his voice was rebid saying: Sir Knight I wonder what accident hath brought you hither, where no Knight hath been these twenty years? Lady, said he, Fortune and my good Destinies, that have been employed to set you at liberty. Sir, (quoth she) it is not I but my Mistress you mean, by whose command I have adventured to see what hath happened, to whom if you will vouchsafe to go, I will conduct you. He then remembered it was not her picture that he had seen and blushed to be so deceived but he told her his coming was to do her Lady service: with that they entered the Garden, and Constantia soon espied him, and seeing the Knight come in such peaceable sort with the Damosel, she went forth to meet him: he likewise seeing her, wreathed his Sword, his heart trembling at the first sight of her, by a natural instinct bearing such a reverend regard to her Majestical person, that when he came near her, he bowed his knee and said: Most noble Lady be not disquieted with fear of restrained liberty, for the date of the Enchantment of this Castle is finished. Constantia step'd to him, and took him by the hand, desiring him not to kneel to her, who had more cause to kneel to him. Honored Lady (said he) I have all the reward I expect, yet grant me favour, which is, to tell me your Name. Constantia's heart leaped within her, which caused an exceeding blush to possess her cheeks, saying: Noble Knight, I were to blame to deny you

so small a request : my name is Constantia. Then hath Heaven (quoth he) made me happy in finding you whom my heart ever honoured. Constantia marvelling who he should be, assuring her self it was not Persicles, because he asked her Name, yet conceiving that sorrow might alter her in so long a time, that he could not suddenly know her ; she was much troubled, till he interrupted her with those speeches : Lady it may be you take me for another, to rid you out of which ambiguity, my name is The Knight of the Oracle, which I have but lately been known by, for before I was called Montelion. being bred up in Assyria, but whether I was born there or who my Parents were, I cannot tell ; the cause of my travel into this country was in your search, in the company of Persicles, who for your absence liveth in perpetual grief, therefore cheer up your heart, and put confidence in my fidelity, who will not leave you till I have brought you to his presence. Constantia's heart was so filled with joy to hear his words, and withal, remembering what Philothesa had told her of Montelion, she said: Most honoured Knight, I have heard before of your loyal friendship, shown to my dear Lord Persicles, which makes me put my whole confidence in you, which came to my hearing by the report of a Lady that you lately succoured in that Country, named Philothesa. He hearing that, fetch'd a deep sigh, saying : Indeed I once enjoyed her presence, but whether I shall ever see her again, or where she is, I know not ; yet if I were not deluded, I beheld her passing out of this Castle. It may be so (said Constantia) for she was with me this day, and hath been here many days ; but the Enchantress in great haste, and by violence took her from me, carrying her I know not whither, by whose report of your virtues, I conceive such comfort in their assurance, that I entreat your promise of assistance, and then shall my heart rest void of fear, as if I were in my Father's Court.

My heart (said he) rejoiceth to hear your kind speeches, bowing to employ my self to be at your command. Then they departed into the Palace, with purpose not to tarry there, but instantly to leade the same : but coming into the outward Court he remembered he heard the voices of men that lay in Bondage, being willing to succour them, desiring her not to be offended

If he made some stay to release them out of Bondage, which he could scan do, when there was none to resist him, and in small search he found the Keys that opened the entrance into the Prison, leaving Constantia in security, for he would not offend her senses with the smell thereof; and being entered, he found a great number there enclosed, many of them in such poor and distressed estate, that his heart lamented to behold them: at last he espied Helion (though to him unknown) whose flesh seemed to be incorporate with the Earth whereon he lay, from whence he could not rise without help, and knowing the Enchantment to be finished repented himself of what he had done. When he had set them at liberty, and they were come into the clear light, with one assent all yielded him thanks: Constantia likewise seeing them, wept for grief, that so many should be endangered to set her at liberty. They all proffered their service unto her, but she desiring not to be known of any, in courteous sort refused the same, reposing her whole confidence in The Knight of the Oracle, who presently according to her desire left the Palace, and without the Bridge he found his Horse grazing amongst others that had lost their Riders; amongst them he chose out three on which he mounted Constantia and her two Damoisels, halting to travel so far as the days length would permit from the Palace, lodging that night in a small Village: The Knights that had Liberty seeing them departed, betook themselves to travel, except Helion who was so weak he could not travel.

C H A P. XXIX.

How the Knight of the Oracle departed with Constantia; how they arrived at Delatus's Castle. How she knew him to be her Son

Constantia found such Courteous Behaviour, and kind assistance in the Knight that she remained in great quiet; but noting his countenance, she perceived it to be darkned with some misty clouds of discontent, which she supposed to be for the loss of Philotheta; but yet she concealed her Opinion from him, wherein she misjudged right on his infirmity; for his heart was pinched with such care for her loss and safety, that

could endure no quiet. In the morning when they should depart, they disputed whether they should prepare to travel, or stay to hear of Persicles there, or go directly into Assyria; amongst many doubts they agreed to travel into Assyria, where he told Constantia they should assuredly find him; for the time of the appointed meeting of him and the King of Armenia drew nigh. After many dayes travel, they came to the place where he remembered he first saw Philotheta, and parted from Persicles: which he revealed not to Constantia, as unwilling to make her privy to his love: yet he purposed in his Journey to visit Amphiador hoping to find her there, and coming to the Castle, he was welcomed thither by Delatus, who was again restored to his Dukedom. Sir (quoth The Knight of the Oracle) I thought this had been Amphiador's Castle. Amphiador did possess it (said he) but indeed the Right was mine; and though I have no acquaintance with you, yet I beseech you accept of such entertainment as it yieldeth; and if no longer, yet for this night, that I may know whom I have lodged, and you have some knowledge of my affection unto you. They both noting with what hearty words he spake, being weary with travel, alighted to rest themselves, being kindly welcomed by him and Asala. After Supper Delatus began these speeches.

Worthy Knight, should I rehearse the whole circumstance of my misfortune and Amphiador's wickedness, I should both trouble you with the tediousness, and renew my own sorrows: only this, he brought means to deprive me of this my Dukedom, and caused Penthrasus to Enchant me in the Desert, with purpose I should never return; yet he laboured me bound me there no longer than Constantia should remain Enchanted in the Tower built by B. Helion; revealing many secrets to me that I will disclose hereafter. Not many days since, I found my self at liberty, whereby I knew the Enchantment was ended. The same day I laboured Amphiador, seeing her power at an end, came to this Castle, bringing Philotheta with her, not his but my Daughter, declaring my releasment, with whom he fled, but whither I know not, which I fear will turn to her great sorrow; for his mind is so apt to truely that he careth not to act any illany to satisfy his own mind. I tell this unto you, though

T

I know

I know it concerns you not, yet to let you understand that by finishing the Enchantment I was released, which Ila knowing gave him knowledge of, which is the cause of his flight. I desire you, (said he) to grant me one favour, which is to let me know if your name be not Constantia. I am (quoth she) that most unfortunate creature and by this Knights valour was I set at liberty, to whom I am much bound. My heart greatly rejoiceth (said Delatus) that ever I had cause to do you any courtesie, and that it was my good fortune to see you in this place, having long wished for your release; not only for my own good, but for that noble King Persicles's sake, who was with me in the desert when I lived enthralled, and with earnest resolution determined to spend the date of his life in your search: from which I dissuaded him, and by my direction he returned into Assyria; for the sequel of your releasment was revealed to me by Penthrasus himself, which none could atteste but your own Son, which is this noble Knight. Nay (said he) doubt not of this, for what he revealed and I have published is true though it resteth not in my knowledge to dilate the circumstances of it. They both wondered at his speeches, and The Knight of the Oracle said: Can I be more fortunate; or hear better news, or receive any comfort more than this? O Heavens, grant that my joyful hope may not be frustrated, but that I may be assured I am descended of such noble Parents, which may be true: For Cothens often told me that he found me on the top of a Mountain lying in swaddling cloaths, and not far off the body of a woman torn and dismembred by wild beasts, and many Jewels about me, one of which I have ever since worn about my neck. Constantia seeing it knew the same, embracing him in her arms, and kissing him, whilst she with humble duty did her reverence. I should be too tedious to recite their joys, and how much Delatus and Alsala made of them, who would not so leave them but promised to travel with them into Assyria, where they were assured to meet Persicles, but in such sort that none might know them, for as yet Constantia feared her Fathers displeasure. They stayed there but that night, and early the next morning they betook themselves to travel. Notwithstanding this joy, The Knight of the Oracle felt some sparks of discontent which troubled his senses, and turn-

ed his quiet into disquiet, which was with the remembrance of Philotheta, whose mischance pinched him to the heart: she was also troubled with the same disquiet, fearing never to see him again, little thinking it had been he that finished the Enchantment; besides, she was much troubled with Ha's dealing, who having brought her to Amphiador, fled and was never seen of her again.

Amphiador being alone with Philotheta, thought it not good for him to discover himself lest he thereby should hazard his life: but disgussing himself and her, left Arabia, and travelled into Persia, thinking to live there till death, undescried; and finding out a habitation fit for that purpose, he told her what he intended, perswading her to stay with him. This troubled her very heart, fearing some greater mischief would follow, which according to her misdoubt fell out: for when he saw no means to recover his dignity, nor to attain any other felicity but to live in obscurity, his mind being addicted to a licentious desire began to dote on Philotheta's beauty which burst out into a flame, revealing the same in this sort: Philotheta (quod he) if you knew what I would say, or if you could conceive my meaning without words I would refrain to speak; but since there is no hope for me to live without attaining my desire, I will utter to you the depth of my good will, and the thing I desire so much, you should know, which is, that I love you, this I hope cannot be grievous unto you. Should I not (said she) love you; I were to be accounted very ungrateful and unworthy, having found you so kind, which hindereth me to yield you thanks. Then (said he) let me enjoy that love, for your beauty hath ensnared my heart, and nothing but the sweet thereof can ease my torment: here we may live together void of disquiet enjoying each others love with content, which exceedeth the pleasure that more dignified honour yieldeth. Philotheta at the first understood his meaning, replying with mildness, but her heart so much disdained to yield to that he desired, that she could not contain her self, but made him this answer: Amphiador, dost thou think thy wickedness can overmaster my virtue? Or dost thou think I can like to hear thy odious speeches that bewrayeth the inward rancor of thy heart? Or dost thou behold such looseness in me, that should animate thee

to this dishonourable attempt? O, dost thou think that I will yield to thy Lust? no, now I so much abhor thee that I shall count my self the worse because I know thee, and curse my cruel Destinies that have made me to see thee, and will rather end my life desperately, than suffer my self to conceive one good thought of thee: therefore leaue off where thou hast begun, for I will sooner massacre my self, than yield to the least part of thy desire.

C H A P. XXX.

How Amphiadore, Philotheta and Praxentia met: how they prevented his Lust, and departed towards Assyria.

IT chanced, that not long after, as Amphiadore was walking alone in a solitary place, he heard the lamentation of a distressed Lady, who uttered these words: What misery am I brought into by my own dotting folly on that unknown Knight which neuer regarded me? Fond Woman that I am, thus to abandon my Fathers Court, where I was renowned for vertue: for who heard the name of Praxentia that did not adore the same? And who was more reuerenced than my self, who now have brought my honour into disgrace, and for the love of a stranger have resolved to match with so mighty a Prince as Palian? O Pericles, the may I curse, for by thy means he is lost, or left where he will neuer return.

Amphiadore wondred much to hear her name Pericles, Palian and Praxentia, which names he knew, admired who it should be, but seeing her silent, he drew near her saying: Lady, hearing your laments, I could not chuse but pity you, which makes me thus bold to approach into your company, proffering my assistance to aid you in what I can. My friend (said Praxentia) against my will you are pitie to my estate; which if you pity, succour me: for I am brought low by too much grief, and weak for want of sustenance. Lady (qd. he) my habitation is not far off, whither if you will go, you shall have what you desire. Being come thither, they found Philotheta drowned in tears, the cause whereof he well knew: but Praxentia wondred at it, containing another

another inward sorrow to see so sweet a Creature in such sadness. Philotheta marvelled what she was, hoping by her company to receive some comfort.

Amphiador leading them both together went out to meditate on what he had done, desiring by what means to enjoy both their Loves; which he was fully resolved to do, though the deed was never so wicked.

Praxentia having well refreshed her self with such good food as she had received, demanded Philotheta's cause of sorrow. Ah me (said she) none so miserable as I: this Tyrant that brought you hither is my Father-in-Law, whose mind is so wicked, that he strives to win me to his Lust, which addeth much sorrow to my heart; so that I am weary of my life. My name is Philotheta, Daughter to the Duke of Ila, whom all men thought had been dead: but he being informed of the contrary by the Enchantress, fled, bringing me hither by force, where he intends to keep me as his bond-slave, but the Heavens I hope will obtain some succour to my distress. Your help I cannot desire, because you are in distress too: to remedy which evil you are fallen into a place that yieldeth no comfort: Before Praxentia could reply, Amphiador came in and entertained her with many counterfeit courtesies, and comforted her with many fair speeches, professing so many services, that none but one of so impudent a disposition could have found on such a sudden to proffer: the purpose whereof Praxentia (being before fore-warned) well understood, fearing some further mischief should follow thereon. That day they could have no further conference together, for he kept himself always in their company.

When it was night they thought to have lodged together; but he ordered the contrary: by which means for three days after, they could not utter their minds to one another. In the mean time Amphiador was never out of one of their companies, persuading Philotheta to yield her liking to what he had proffered; and using such speeches to Praxentia as might draw her to a good opinion of him.

One night Amphiador being very desirous to possess Praxentia's Love, with softly steps he stole into her Chamber, creeping along the floor, untill he attained to the bed-side; and perceiving her

her sleep soundly, without speaking he crept into the bed to her. She feeling one in the bed, was so amazed and affrighted, that before he could embrace her as he intended, she leaped out on the other side, and ran to the door: to whom he called saying, I beseech you stay, I mean you no harm by Heaven, I will not offer you injury. What William art thou (said she) that seekest my dishonour? O what wicked pretence drives thee hither at this unreasonable time, and in such audacious sort to affright me? Neither intending your dishonour nor under other pretence then virtuous, came your poor servant Amphiadore into your presence, only with thankfulness to manifest my hearts true devotion: I beseech you harm me not, nor suspect me, for my heart will sooner tear itself from its pieces, than think a thought to wrong your worthiness. Should I be so mad as to trust thee, thou mightest well requite me for immodest, and well might I blame myself if I sustained wrong; therefore for this time I will leave you, which that she made fast the door and hastened unto Philotheta's Chamber, calling out aloud, Philotheta, Philotheta, let me in. She being a sleep was half amazed with the noise, not daring at the first or second call to open the door: but when she heard it was a Woman's voice, she opened the same; which she had no sooner done, but Praxentia slept in desiring her to make it fast again, standing with fear so mute, that untill she had re-assumed her memorial senses to their proper use, she could not speak a word: whilst Philotheta bewailed her sorrow, often demanding the cause thereof. At last she declared how Amphiadore had used her. O base William (said Philotheta) will the Fates suffer him to succeed thus and not cut him off, or can we devise no means to abate his intent? Lady (quoth Praxentia) do but joyn with me, and you shall soon see that between us we will quickly be rid of him. O Lady, (said Philotheta) I should think my self the most happy woman living, and for ever honour you if by your counsel and help I attain this felicity. Then (quoth she) by some means or other convey his sword into my Chamber, and there hide your self till I come: in the mean time I will so deal with him that he shall come again to my Chamber, without suspect of our intent, with meer hopes to attain my love; and when he is come, I will so work with him, that either we will by cunning

out-reach him or reach the same in his bowels. All this, (said Philotheta) will I constantly perform.

Early the next morning Philotheta fetcht Praxentia's apparel, and putting it on, she went down where Amphiador was: who seeing her, came to her, desiring that she would pardon his last night's boldness. Sir (said she) I was disquieted therewith more than I needed, considering you meant me no violence as you protest: but it was great folly in you to come at so unreasonable a time, and not make the party acquainted. Pardon me, I humbly beseech you, and withal pitty me, that am ensnared with your beauty.

Many such speeches he used, and she counterfeited many feigned denials, which was intermingled with such hope, that he perceived she would yield, and therefore the more he entreated, bowed and protested to win her consent: which at last according to her appointment, she granted; but with such conditions as furthered the purpose of their intended revenge. He being joyful thereof, left her; and she went to Philotheta, declaring how she had dealt with him.

When night approached, he walked abroad to meditate on his ensuing pleasure; thinking by that time he returned they would be parted to their Lodgings. In the mean time Philotheta crept into the Chamber two Swoords, being all the weapons that were in the house and hid her self from being seen. When he thought it time, he returned, and coming to the Chamber door, he found Praxentia ready to let him in, whose heart trembled at the first sight of him, but yet she took it off with as much courage as might be in a woman. When he was entered and the door made fast, having embraced her with a lascivious kiss, the which she patiently endured by reason of her promise, he went to her, whilst she stood striving to undress her self. When she saw him laid the same to the bed side, giving him a betraying kiss, saying Amphiador, how much do I now differ from Chastity that would yield to violate the same without the Holy Rites of Marriage, wherein I shall cast away my self, and make my name odious throughout the world, if you forsake me, of whose safety I have no assurance. Tush, quoth he, fear not but come to bed: I will then make thee a faithful promise, that thou shalt rest contented.

contented. That were (said she) to yield possession before, and afterwards repent. By my soul (saith he) I will not touch you before I be licensed by your free consent. Then (said she) let me bind your hands, and I will without delay come to you. He accounted that request to proceed from bashful fear, not from policy; thinking though his hands were bound, he should be good enough for her with his legs, granted it. Then she took a Scaut which she had brought on purpose, and therewith bound his hands so fast that it was impossible for him to undo them, which done Philothesa step'd forth, delivering one of the Swords to Praxentia, and holding the other hand against his breast said, Now, Amphiador, what hath thy lewdness brought thee unto but misery? Thinkest thou; that hadst no mercy in seeking our dishonour, to find remorse in us to work revenge? Nay, Villainous Traytor (said Praxentia) should we suffer so vile a Misdemeanor to live, we should do a wicked deed: for a Man of thy impious life will infect the whole world. Art thou so treacherous that thou carest not what Laws thou violatest, and yet so simple as to be overcome by a Woman? Yet know whom thou hast offended, and to whom thou wouldst have done violence: Know I say, Traytor, that my name is Praxentia, Daughter to the Emperor of Persia, that will work revenge upon thee, worthy thy heinous act. Amphiador marvelled when he heard her name, and he lay confounded with shame, his heart fainting with such fear, that with little violence it would have been overcome. To make him more sure one of them bound his feet, whilst the other stood ready to stab him if he stirred. This done, they withdrew themselves, consulting which way to be rid of him. Most noble Lady (quoth Philothesa) your prudence hath set us at liberty from this Tyrant, whom if you please, we will leave in this place, and not stain our innocent hands with his impure blood. But (said Praxentia) how shall we escape from hence? Easily, replied she, for leading him fast bound, there is none to pursue us. Then Praxentia went unto him, and said: Amphiador, we cannot as yet resolve how to work sufficient revenge upon thee: therefore make no acclamation, but with patience abide our will, which will be too favourable: for if we hear thee but once open thy mouth, such shall be thy usage, that thou shalt wish thou hadst taken

take
The
it m
ratio
cerm
prom
I re
lion
with
inter
cells
stem
her
ratio
the r
my c
dew
you
with
tobe
gray

How
a

A
nigh
gan
him
have
foze
had
there
oban

taken

taken our directions; upon which they locked the door, and left him. Then they began to consult what to do; Praxentia saying, Lady, it may be you will travel into Arabia, which will occasion our separation; for I resolve to go to Assyria, upon an occasion that concerns no less than my life, which I will impart unto you upon promise of secrecy. I were not worthy to live (replied she) if I revealed your counsel. Then did she unfold her love to Montelion, and how Palian cross the same. Philotheta's heart melted within her to hear her speech, fearing to be disappointed of her intent, being troubled with so great anguish that so great a Princess should be her rival; sometimes thinking that he did not esteem her according to his speech, but that he proffered his love to her of common courtesy to try her affection. Many other cogitations occurred in her brain; but seeing that she expected a reply, she made this answer: Most Noble Princess if you will accept of my company, I will in regard of your courtesy undeservedly shew to me, venture my self with you, and do my best to further you in attaining your desire. Praxentia was glad thereof; and with this resolution in the morning they left the place, travelling towards Assyria, changing their upper Garments into Palmers gray.

C H A P. XXXI.

How The Knight of the Oracle, Constantia and the rest hearing a lamentable cry, found Amphiador starved to death.

Amphiador lay all that day upon the Bed fast bound, perswading himself they meant him no evil; but when it drew to night he marvelled that they came not again. Then he began to suspect the truth, that they were departed; which vexed him so much, that he would have destroyed himself if he could have found means, continuing the length of that discomfortable night in cursing his own Fortune and Folly, that had brought him to that misery; thinking either to starve there for want of Food, or to preserve his life by eating of his own flesh, and so to dye a lingering death. Four days after

Fortune brought things to pass, that The Knight of the Oracle, Delatus, Constantia and Alsala, with many others in their Company, having lost their way, lighted on the place where Amphiador lay, making such lamentation for want of food, that it pierced the ears of the Knight, who first hearing the same, set spurs to his horse, and entered the house, the door whereof he found open, and drawing his sword he found the Chamber from whence that piteous cry proceeded, fast lockt, which he brake open, and found Amphiador in such a lamentable plight that the water stood in his eyes. Amphiador seeing him, cried out for meat. What art thou? (quoth he.) My name (said he) is Amphiador, wretched Amphiador, that for my sins endure this punishment. The Knight of the Oracle presently unbouded him, and went with him to seek for victuals, which he soon found. By this time Delatus and the rest were entered, and Amphiador spying Alsala lay down dead. Farewell (said The Knight of the Oracle) hadst thou dyed sooner, then should not some have cause to complain of thy Tyranny. They made short tarryance in that place, for that it yielded little comfort, but again travelled towards Assyria.

C H A P. XXXII.

How the Emperor of Persia and the King of Macedonia met to conclude the peace between Persicles and the King of Armenia how Persicles erected a Pavilion to entertain all Strangers: how The Knight of the Oracle and Constantia arrived there: how Persicles discovered them, and of the joy that was made for their safety: how Persicles knew The Knight of the Oracle to be his son, and was afterwards married to Constantia.

The Emperor of Persia and the King of Macedonia according to the Peace ratified between Persicles and the King of Armenia, met at the City of Pisos, and were there received by Persicles in such honourable sort, as is not to be described. The City of Pisos bordereth on the utmost confines of Assyria, but above a furlong distant from Armenia, on the edge whereof stood the City of Lissar, rich and populous, where the King of

Armenia then lay. Between these two Cities was so large a valley of plains, that the fair prospect of both the Cities lay open to each others view. In the midst of this valley were the Royal Tents of Persia and Macedonia pitched, and about them a number of Tents of gallant Knights that came to bear them company; and both the Cities were fortified with Garrisons of Soldiers, to prevent injury that might be offered to either party. The King of Macedonia likewise brought with him his three Sons, Mentrus, Daurus, Thotus, his Queen and his fair Daughter Sabina, in whose company were the choicest Ladies of Macedonia, and such troops of valiant Knights, that all the Valley was filled with their Tents and Pavillions. Persicles trusting to the assurance Delatus had given him of Constantia's Release, caused all the beautiful Damosels in Assyria to be brought before him; choosing out of them one hundred, whom he caused to be cloathed all in white. He also caused a stately Pavillion to be erected in the view of all the rest, of such costly and curious work that all that beheld it admired the same: over the door of the Pavillion were these Verses.

Honour, Valour, and Vertue guard this place,

Where Honour is for all that these embrace:

An absent Knight of honour'd Gifts and Fame

Shall be their Host, MONTELION is his name;

Here boldly enter; repose and feed;

For Love to him made Persicles do this deed,

Who 'ere can tell where he remains,

Shall have a Royal Gift to quit his pains.

Persicles's intent in doing this, was that all strangers that had no possession of their own, should there find entertainment in honour of Montelion, in whose memorial he had built the same as a remembrance of his love and labour; his intent being to draw all strangers thither, by whose report he hoped to hear some news of his beloved friend.

Within few days The Knight of the Oracle and his company arrived at Assyria; and meeting with an Assyrian, he demanded of him whose Tents those were: he declared to him all that he knew. Where may we have Lodging (said he?) Not in the City (answered the Assyrian) for thither are none permitted to come.

come without examination; but in the midst of these Tents is a Pavilion in remembrance of the Noble Knight Montelion, who freed our Countrey from the Armenians; in which, all strangers have entertainment in his remembrance. Wilt thou direct us thither, (said he?) and I will reward thee. I will, replied the Assyrian. When they came thither, according to his report, they were entertained, and lodged in such sort as they desired; and being late, every one departed to their place of rest, omitting further conference until next day.

Early the next morning The Knight of the Oracle arming himself mounted his Steed, and rode up and down till Noon, to behold the Tents and beautiful situation of those two Cities, and to see the Tilts and Turneps that were performed by many Knights returning again to confer with his Mother about discovering themselves.

Perciles hearing that many strangers were in Montelion's Pavilion, disguised himself in the habit of one of his own men, only to view them, and see if his Servants used them so honorably as he intended, and coming into the room where Constantia, The Knight of the Oracle, Delatus and Alsala were, at the first sight knew Delatus and Montelion, who was called Knight of the Oracle; and viewing well Constantia he also knew her. Then did he presently believe that The Knight of the Oracle had released her. All these joys concurring, filled up his senses with such delight, that he was forced to withdraw himself from being discovered, which at that time he would not be. Altering his disguise again, he went to the Emperors of Persia's Tent; and finding him in a convenient place, he uttered these speeches.

Most renowned Emperors, the friendship and help I have received by your favor, without any merit of my own, hath made me most infinitely bound unto your Excellency; yet nevertheless I desire one favour more at your hands; which you may with more safety grant than deny, and thereby make me and your self both happy. My loving friend, (said he) what ever it be I will not deny you. I make the more doubt, (replied he) because I have heard you show the contrary; and yet should you perform that show, it would procure much discontent. A rash show (said the Emperors) may be broken: therefore let me know your request, and

and it may be I will dispence therewith. My desire is, (said he) that you would pardon your Daughter Constantia; and remit the offence committed by her and him, that caused her to leave the Persian Court. Why, my Lord, (said the Emperor) do you know where she is? First, I beseech you (quoth he) grant my request, and I will tell you all I know. For your sake (said he) I will freely accept her into my favor. I humbly thank you, (replied he) both for her and my self: It was my unhappy self that was the cause of her depature, but since that time, I have not seen her till this day, for going to the Pabillion, which is named by Montelion, I saw her there in company with him, who is called, The Knight of the Oracle. The Emperor rejoiced greatly to hear these tidings, which so well pleased him, that he could not chuse but reveal it to the Empress, who was ready to run forth of her Tent to see her. The Emperor and Empress, with a goodly train, accompanied by Persicles, who had sent for three hundred Damocels, and most of the Perss of Assyria to welcome Constantia, with great joy went to the Pabillion, the Emperor and Empress going before, and he coming after, that when their greetings were past, he might have the more liberty to embrace her. Then entering the room where Constantia and Montelion were, they knie to her, and she them, falling prostrate before them whilst they welcomed her with great kindness. Then welcoming The Knight of the Oracle, Persicles embraced Constantia, each weeping for joy: O Heavens (said he) never was I blest till this happy hour: after so much sorrow to enjoy such pleasure. Montelion's approach brake off their speech, who knieled before him. Nay, dear friend (said he) kneel not, for I am not worthy to be so honoured. My Lord (quoth Delatus) well may he do it, for he is your own Son. More honour, joy, comfort and content (said Persicles) could never have happened to any mortal man, than both this day to me; to find a Father, a Wife, and a Son, that this day knew not either Father, Wife, or Son: one so honourable and magnificent, the other so vertuous, bountifull and loving; the last so valiant, vertuous, magnanimous and prudent, that all the worlds wealth cannot counterball my riches. Then turning to the Emperor, knæling down with them, he said,

Renowned

Renowned Emperor, I beseech you accept us, child as your Children, committing all displeasure contrived against us. Then did the Emperor and Empress, Deloratus and Piera, all embrace them, shedding tears of joy for their happy meeting. The Nobles welcome. The Knight of the Oracle and Constantia, and such joy was made on every side, as is not to be expressed. Parting from thence towards the City in Royalty, they were welcomed by the Citizens and Merchants with great joy, whilst the Emperor uttered these speeches:

Behold here, my friends of Assyria, your King, Lord and Sovereign, the Son of Persicles and Constantia; how may you applaud the bounty of Heaven, providing for you such a Noble Prince? Then taking Constantia by the hand, he said: Here Persicles, take my daughter; I give her thee as freely as the heavens gave her me, that marriage may join hands as true love hath united your hearts. He took that gift with more joy than if he had delivered him the Worlds Monarch; saying, Most mighty Emperor, I know not how to render sufficient thanks, in that your highness is pleased to enrich me with your Daughter, which hath been the only thing I always desired, for which I hope to shew such deserts hereafter as neither she shall be discontented, nor your Majesty repent this good deed.

C H A P. XXXIII.

How the two Ladies arrived at the Pavilion: how Philotheta discovered to Praxentia Parentia's love, to make tryal of him whom she most dearly loved.

Now great joy was made by the Assyrians for these accidents. That evening had brought the two Ladies Philotheta and Praxentia to the City walls, where they beheld the Turnaments, and saw The Knight of the Oracle bear away the prize, whom they were informed to be Montesion and son of Persicles and Constantia. This news rejoiced them both; Praxentia hoping to satisfy his love, and Philotheta purposing to live no longer than to live in hope to do the like; taking the entertainment of The Knight of the Oracle's Pavilion, which yielded them such

security as they desired. Praxentia berhinking her self of a way to effect her desire, thus brake her mind to Philotheta : Lady, (said she) I am more beholding unto you for undertaking this travail for my sake, then I shall ever live to requite ; notwithstanding, for that my passions crave pity, and your good help, I beseech you to aid me in this extremity : I have made my name and fortune known to you, and now it would be in vain for me to stay ; for should I manifest my Love, it would turn to my everlasting shame ; I will therefore make my being known here to none, but The Knight of the Oracle, which shall be done by this means, if you will undertake it. In this habit you may as safely go without being known as if you had never been seen ; and finding him out, give him knowledge of my being here, and the misery I have endured for his sake ; uttering the same in such form of words as shall best like you ; this will best means to bring me home, if you will perform the same. Philotheta promised her what she would do, it the next day.

Early the next morning Philotheta disguised her self with the Pabillion to seek opportunity to deliver her message, and coming to the City gates with a pretended excuse (as she were examined) found no resistance : but coming to the Palace she entered into the great Hall, where she stayed to see the Royalty of the Court, till she beheld The Knight of the Oracle, only attended by his Page, pass into the Garden, and then she followed him till he looking back, and espying a Palmer behind him, stayed courteously demanding what he would have ? who said, Knight of the Oracle, I have a matter of secrecie to deliver to you. The most vertuous, beautiful, and constant Lady Praxentia, whom you well know, having ever since she first saw you, loved you, (though without comfort) and endured much sorrow for your absence, regarding her Love to you more than her Life, Parents, and Country ; hath for your sake left her Pomp and Dignity, to live in sorrow and misery to find you out, who remaineth now in the Pabillion, where for your sake all strangers are entertained, in such sorrow and anguish, as did you behold the same your vertuous mind could not choose but pity her. This I am bold to utter to you, not sent hither, but in pity of her, and to do you good, she being Daughter to the mighty King of Macedonia. Palmer (said he) I commend

mend thy good meaning, and wish I could follow thy counsel, which bringeth much disquiet to my heart : I pity her more than she doth her self, and wish not to have been born, rather than she should do her self wrong for my sake : She is worthy to be beloved, but I cannot alter my affections that are already settled, where yet I reap no hope of comfort, and I am kept from by many difficulties, which makes me equal to her in sorrow. I speak not this with intent you should tell it her, for that would make her more desperate ; but I fear that you are sent by her : which if it be so, you will do me wrong, and her no good : therefore I pray you dissuade her if you can : for a Strangers counsel in such matters prevaile much : and if you can bring me news that she hath revolted from this Love, I shall count my self most happy.

Sir, (said the Palmer) I would return to you again, if I knew conveniently how to come to speak with you ; I will be (replied he) to morrow within the City about this time, hoping to hear better news from her by thy persuasions. Then giving the Palmer a rich Jewel for his pains, they parted, Philotheta out of the Palace, and he into the Garden, meditating on what he had heard. Philotheta returning to the Pavilion, uttered the whole sum of the conference she had with The Knight of the Oracle, unto Praxentia ; which when she heard, it so grieved her that Philotheta expected when she would have yielded up the Ghost, which to prevent, she said, be not so impatient but hearken to my Counsel ; I have appointed to come to him to morrow ; at which time I will deal so effectually with him, that he shall come and speak with you, and when he sees your laments, there is no doubt but he will consent. This somewhat satisfied her ; yet her mind was so full of grief and vexation, that her eyes could take no rest, by reason of the earnest desire she had to hear the next news. Philotheta was not void of care, as she had good cause, undertaking a matter against her self ; yet to make assured trial of his constancy, she did it. Being alone, she meditated on the doubtful issue of this attempt, which would either procure her much joy or sorrow, sometimes persuading her self it was she he loved, that he was constant, that no persuasions could alter him ; yet she thought Praxentia's birth, beauty and lament might overcome

overcome him, and the rather, for that he had no assurance of her love or ever to see her again. Thus this fair Lady torment-
ed her self with contrariety of doubts, longing as much or more
than Praxentia for the next mornings approach.

C H A P. XXXIV.

Of the Treasons practised against The Knight of the Oracle.

The King of Armenia seeing such a League concluded, by
means of this marriage, between the Emperour of Persia
and Persicles, envying his good, thought that he was likely to pre-
vail nothing against him by that means; and calling unto him a
Knight whom he most favoured, and was always counselled by,
named, Cisor, to him he uttered his discontent, who presently
counselled him to break the peace, and suddenly surprize the City.
The King liked not that counsel, but rather desired by some se-
cret means either to poison Persicles and his Son, or set some dis-
cord between them and the King of Macedonia, that so the peace
might be broken. Cisor promised to perform something to that
effect; and finding out Palian he said: Noble Prince, I marvel
you suffer your Gloy thus to be darkned by this upstart Knight,
that nameth himself of the Oracle: can so honourable a mind as
yours brook such indignities? Is not Assyria yours by right?
Are not you more noble by birth, and worthy to be as famous as
he is? Why do you suffer him and his Father to carry away all
the prize of honour? Are all the Knights in Armenia too weak to
cope with him? Doth not his behaviour shew that he scorns you?
Hath not he alone cross your good fortune? Then like not to be re-
viled but to revenge. Join with the King of Macedonia's Sons,
who are of the same mind as I am, and I will lay you down such a
plot as shall abate his bravery. If these Knights and such as
are now come out of Macedonia cannot foil them, then shall you
live in contempt of the whole world, and be accounted their infe-
rior.

Palian hearing his speeches, breathing forth a deep sigh, said,
Thou renewest my grief afresh: for I have drank so much
sorrow in that kind of discontent, that my heart is overcome

therewith, and said would work my releasement; if you would be secret and swear to assist me, I would tell my whole heart unto you. Upon his protestations he revealed his love to Praxentia, and how he was cross'd by Montelion, with all that had passed since, and of her escape out of Persia, which was only for his love that regarded her not, and how he desired revenge, his mind, being apt to entertain any complor. Cisor then said: Confer with the King's Sons, and discover to them with what earnestness she hath sought his Love; and receiving scorn for her affection, and disdain for her good will, hath in a desperate sort (ashamed to be rejected) stolen from the Court of the Emperour of Persia, either to destroy her self, or willfully to live in perpetual exile: When they hear this, their hearts will be easily won to revenge her wrong; which done, let them alone to meditate thereon. Cisor having thus whetted him on, left him: which so prevailed, that he put the same in practice with the King's Sons, that they began mortally to hate Montelion; agreeing to arm themselves in such Armour that none but Cisor should know them, and for some days to lodge in the Pavilion, and there to devise which way to work him some disgrace. Upon this conclusion they parted, and provided Armour for that purpose.

C H A P. XXXV.

How The Knight of the Oracle arrived at the Pavilion disguised to satisfy Praxentia: how he was discovered by Palian: how he and the King of Macedon's Sons would have murdered him; how he slew one of them; and was accused by the Princess of a Rape, which broke the concluded peace.

When the time was come, Philotheta not failing, met The Knight of the Oracle to do her Message. How now Palmer (said he) dost thou bring me news that Praxentia hath given over her love? If thou hast, tell me; if not, I pray thee trouble me not. My Lord, (quoth he) she rageth most extremely, and I fear will do her self some violence, unless you pity her. I cannot do that (said he) though it pincheth me to hear of her sorrows, what can I say more? or what wouldst thou wish me to

do to ease her, and yet reserve my Loyalty? Sir, (replied she) you may consider that she is honourable, vertuous and Daughter to a King, worthy to be beloved; and it may be the Lady whom you love is not comparable to her in any of these gifts: No, nor in love, which may peradventure love another; and then you will wrong your self, and injure her. Peace Palmer (quoth he) if my fortune prove so bad, the greater will be my misery; tell me therefore, what thou wouldst have me do. My Lord (said she) had I not promised her to bring you to speak with her, she would have destroyed her self ere this; therefore vouchsafe me such favor that I may perform my word, which may be a means to end her malady. Didst thou know (quoth he) how unwilling I am to do it, I think thou wouldst not request it: but to satisfy her of that which peradventure she will not credit by thy report, and at thy request I will come to her this evening. Philotheta being parted from him, by the way uttered these speeches: O that fortune would favour me so much, and bless me with that felicity to be the party this worthy Knight loveth so constantly! By this time she was come to the Pavilion, where when they entered four Knights in black armor, gallantly mounted, by their outward habit pretending some cruel Tragedy: these Knights were Palian and the King of Macedon's three Sons, who had loved either secretly or openly to complot the death of Montelion; taking up their lodgings to hatch their Treason.

The day being past, The Knight of the Oracle apparelled himself in the habit of one of the King's servants; and only girding his Sword to his side, he went to the Pavilion, concealing himself so closely as he could; But the Heavens had ordained him to endure some misery, for Palian espied his coming thither. Being entered the Pavilion, Philotheta met him, who with carefulness expected his coming, conducting him unto the place where Praxentia was; which went so sore against her heart to do, that with very grief she was ready to die; whither Palian's treacherous eyes watched him. The Princess spying him, blushed exceedingly, her own heart accusing her of immodesty, to reveal that which she would have concealed. He saluting her, uttered these speeches:

O noble Princess, to fulfill your desire, and show my grati-

tude to you for your friendship bestowed on him that is not worthy thereof; I am come to you, desiring you not so misconstrue me, nor condemn me of inhumanity, that am not mydown, and therefore cannot give my self to you. I have uttered to the Palian that which I will now conceal, because I will not offend you, desiring you to command my life, if you please, for that shall be at your disposition, otherwise I cannot employ my self to your liking. I have long since known of your good will to me, which Palian by his subtilty increased of whole love and proceedings I know so much, that to fulfil your request, I should wrong him. I was the man that should have joyned your hands, when he took my name and had it upon him: which I presume here to utter, that you may remember my innocency in that complat, and how constantly I have bowed my self to another.

Praxentia with anger, shame and grief, stood like one mute, being that he knew of Palian's act; ashamed to make love contrary to the property of her kind, and grieved to be disappointed; all which together, suffered her not to speak, till at last her passions and burning lust so overcome her, that kneeling down, she said: Good Knight blame me not, nor condemn me of immodesty, but grant pity to my torment. He taking her up, desired her not to kneel to him that was not worthy thereof, nor able to deserve it. She taking him by the hand desired him to sit down by her upon the Bed, making signs for Philotheta to depart the Room.

To repeat what matter of behaviour this woman used, and the words she spake, would make my modest ear blush: but seeing that nothing could prevail, Rage and Lust so overcame her, that in bitter exclams she cryed out, Inhumane, Disloyal and Base Knight, dost thou requite my Love with this disdain? or thinkest thou I will live to bear the blot of thy refusal? At the conclusion of which words, Thetus entered the Room, and with his Sword dyaton ran at him, who by good fortune seeing him, started aside, otherwise he had been slain, yet he was sore wounded; whereupon drawing his Sword he struck at Thetus, at every blow wounding him. Philotheta hearing the noise, came in, and seeing Montelion wounded, with fear, grief and amazement, cryed out aloud, Help, Help, the King's Son will be murdered. The echo of her shrill voice sounded throughout the whole Pavilion, and

and both the servants and other Knights came running thither : and before they came he had gotten Thetus and owerthrown him, and thrust his sword into his body. By this time Palian and her other two brethren came in, who seeing Thetus slain, cryed out, Stay the Traitor, he hath murdered Thetus, Son to the King of Macedonia. Praxentia hearing that tore her hair, rent her garments, and so disfigured her face, as was lamentable to behold. Some began to lay hands on The Knight of the Oracle; but his Fathers Servants knowing him, stood in his defence : then there began a hot Combat on both parts, and many were slain. Praxentia being now discovered, was known to Palian, and her two brethren, to whom she cryed, Revenge my shame, and my brother's death on this wicked Knight, who seeketh by violence to dishonour me, and hath slain my Brother.

What grief this was to Philotheta you may judge; and how it bereft him to be thus betrayed, cannot be uttered; standing in his own defence against such as would have apprehended him; they did not know him, till he was grievously wounded and many of them slain. By this time, the news thereof came to Persicles, the Emperor of Persia, and the King of Macedonia, who came thither with all speed; and the Assyrians hearing of The Knight of the Oracle's distress, broke the conditions of the concluded peace, and by multitudes ran forth of the City to preserve him.

Persicles first entered the Tent, next him the Emperor, then the King of Macedonia, commanding upon pain of death that no man should strike a blow, yet notwithstanding, rashness and heady force so overcame them, that it was not long before they were appeased, and the Emperor seeing Praxentia there in such sort disfigured, asked if any could tell the cause of that mischief: First Praxentia spake, being most guilty, yet thought to excuse her self: Noble Emperor, my Brother you see is slain in rescuing me from that Knight's violence. The Knight of the Oracle kneeling down before the Emperor, said My noble Grandfather, I flew him in my own defence: neither did I know what he was, being my self trained hither, to my death. More he would have said, but the souldiers having entered the Pavillion, rested not till they had gotten to him, and he to satisfy them, and avoid further mischief departed with them to the City. Then did the Emperor and Persicles,

sicles comfort the King of Macedon : but he being vexed with his Sons death, and his Daughters disgrace, and urged by his other two Sons, that stood by, he said : Emperor of Persia, I am much wronged and abused by thee and thy progeny, by whose falsehood I see my Children lie dead before my face ; how should I then be contented ? I swear by Heaven and Earth I will severely revenge this Wrong.

King of Macedon (said Persicles) I desire thee for accusing me or mine of any dishonour ; and thou shalt see and find, this accusation is false : why else are thy Sons here disguised with my enemy ? by whose plot this mischief was intended against my Son, though it lighted upon themselves.

C H A P. XXXVI.

Of the grief Philotheta endured for this misfortune : how she was taken and carried to the Armenian Host : of Ralea's misfortune, and the message she delivered to Montelion.

Philotheta seeing how unfortunately all things fell out, withdrew her self out of sight, and in bitter exclamings lamented her hard fortune, but most of all, that she was the cause of Montelion's coming thither, which had so nearly endangered his life : therefore she shrouded her self till it was night, which being come, she travelled further into the Country, and selling a Jewel, she altered her old habit into her right form. She staid some days in a Village not far from the City of Pisos, in the house of an ancient Lady named Ralea, to whom she related her misfortunes procured by Amphiador, but concealed her love to Montelion fearing to commit that to her secrecy. Ralea being a woman of great wisdom, used Philotheta very kindly ; promising in words, and her deeds shewing it, that if she would stay with her, she would as dearly tender her as her own Daughter, whom she caused to keep her company. Rejoycing much at this good fortune, being alone she uttered these speeches :

Praxentia, thee only may I accuse for this misery ; for whom I undertook a task which my heart even then abhorred,
and

and now repent, not so much intending to procure thee that thou desiredst, as to satisfy my own disquiet senses, by the same means having drawn the Loyal Knight into danger of his life, whose Blood thou didst seek to spill, else wouldst thou not so dishonourably and falsely have accused him. The consideration of which Stratagems drew such a flood of tears from her eyes, that she could not stop their passage; which Ralea espying; demanded the cause thereof; but seeing Philotheta made no reply, she said, Philotheta I pity your estate, and would gladly know the cause, that I might endeavour to comfort you. Philotheta trusting to her virtue, disclosed to her the love she bare to Montelion, and all that passed betwixt her and Praxentia, as is before rehearsed. Ralea thereby noting her beauty, commended the same; promising her, that if with patience she would quiet her self some few days, she would use all means possible for to comfort her.

Montelion having recovered his wound, gathered together a mighty host, and brought them to the City of Pisos, where were assembled the choice Souldiers, Noblemen, Knights and Gentlemen of Persia to fight in their Emperors behalf, who intrenched themselves without the City. The Kings of Macedonia and Armenia likewise had gathered together so mighty an Army as might have been thought able to make a conquest of the World, who pitched their Tents about the City in Armenia, where their Kings lay. Montelion's heart was fired with desire to dispute back those foes, not staying to give them leave to make the first challenge: But humbling himself upon his knee before the Emperour and his noble Father, I have already I hope satisfied you of my innocence, being train'd thither to my intended death, by Praxentia and her brethren; but for that my honour is blemished by that infamous accusation, the common people rest unsatisfied, and my wrongs unrevenged, I humbly crave your licence that I may send defiance to my false accusers, and by challenge acquit my self: which I am constrained thus hastily to desire, for that my heart will abide extreme torments until it be finished. The Emperour rejoicing at his forwardness, and seeing Persicles willing to have it so, gave his consent. Which done, Montelion left them and arming himself in his Armour, which he had caused to be made of purpose, that no man should

should know him, rode into the field betwixen both Camps, and by a Herald sent this defiance into the Armenians Camp: King of Armenia, there is a Knight whom you behold in the field, that hath sent defiance to all the Knights in this Army, especially to thy Son, whom he accuseth to be a dishonourable Knight, and not worthy the name of a Prince, that he treacherously betrayed Montelion's Life; and he offers by Combat to prove against all Knights, that Montelion is a Knight both honourable and vertuous, and that Parentia's Accusation is untrue: The Message was no sooner delivered, but thousands of Knights made suit to combat him; But Palian to whom it principally belonged to defend his own honour desiring his Father's consent; he obtained it; and arming himself, being gallantly mounted, rode into the field to him.

Montelion being desirous of revenge, and his heart inwardly tormented with grief, met Palian with a furious encounter, he answering him with the like, breaking their Launces with great comeliness; then drawing their Swords, they began their Combat, which was soon ended, for within few blows Montelion's Sword broke, so that he was constrained to close with Palian, winging his Sword from him with such force, that the pommel thereof struck him so violent a blow on the head, that he bruised it, and overthrew him, every one thinking he had been dead: which done, Mensus, eldest Son to the King of Macedonia being ready armed, greeted Montelion with these words: Knight, thou hast undertaken a tedious task to combat all the Knights in this Camp; yet I hope thou shalt never do that, for my self will abate thy courage. If there were as many more (quoth Montelion) I fear not all: if thou comest to combat with me, hold thy tongue, and bestir thy hands, for I will have a bout with thee. With that they gave each other many cruel blows, and received some wounds; till Montelion again overcharged his Sword with unmatchable strength, broke the same; which so vexed him, that he rushed upon Mensus to have closed, but he knowing his intent; avoided him; and before he could turn about gave him so violent a blow that it pierced his armor; Montelion having the hilt of his broken Sword still in his hand, swung the same with such violence, that lighting on Mensus's horse head, struck him down, he having

much ado to get from him without harm. Whilst Mensus was mounting himself on a fresh Steed, Montelion's Esquire brought him the Sword which was given him by the Hesperian Nymphs, which when he grasped, he said, Had I armed my self with this, my foes had felt some smart, and my self less disgrace, meeting again with such fury, that they mangled their Arms, and the blood gushed forth in many places: but The Knight of the Oracle charged his adversary so full, that in a short space he got advantage, wounding Mensus so sore, that had he not been rescued he had either dyed or been forced to yield: so that Montelion returned with victory, to the great joy of the Assyrians, but especially to the Emperour and his Father.

Ralea that day left her house according to her promise to Philotheta, to try whether Montelion did affect her or no: coming to the Court at such time as Montelion was newly arrived, and had his few wounds dress'd, a Messenger gave him knowledge of her coming. Being come to him, and all aboarded the Chamber, he said: Noble Prince, I am come to tell you, that not many dayes since, there happened to come a Lady to my house in the disguise of a Palmer, desiring that I would for certain days entertain her till the wars were ended, for that she had a message to deliver unto you, from a Lady in Arabia, named Philotheta, which she thought good to conceal a time, till you had better leisure to hear it, and to perform that she requested: Notwithstanding, because I honour you above all men, and would shew my duty to you in any respect, I have adventured to give you notice hereof without her knowledge.

The Knight of the Oracle was so ravished with joy to hear Philotheta named, much more that she should send to see him, and most of all what the Message should be, and how she could tell where he was, or how she should remember him who had never but once seen him, that he sat in a deep and silent Meditation, but before he could make answer, a servant of Ralea's came into the room in great haste, uttering these speeches: Madam, since you departed, much sorrow hath befallen us; for certain Companies of the Armenian Host have ransacked your house, stolen your Cattel, carried away the Lady and consumed all your Goods with fire. Ralea with grief then said; My Noble Lord,

(said she) that Lady is the most beautiful Philotheta, that hath long honoured you with a constant love, it was she that in the disguise of a Palmer came as a Messenger to you from Praxentia who was guilty of that intended practice, her modesty withholding her to utter what she was, and undertaking that for Praxentia to make trial of your vertue and which way your affections were bent: Redeem her my Lord if it be possible, for she is the most vertuous Lady living. These words ended, she dyed, which were sufficient to set Montelion's heart on fire, being ready to arm himself, but Ralea's servant seeing it, told him it was too late to pursue them, for by that time they were in the Host.

C H A P. XXXVII

How the King of Armenia sent Philotheta's picture to Delfurno Emperor of Almaign, who promised to aid him against his Foes: of the divers Combats he maintain'd in defence of her beauty.

Philotheta being now in the Armenian Host, by reason of her exceeding beauty, was presently carried to the Tent of the King of Macedon, who no sooner saw her, but he presently thought her a gift fit for the greatest Potentate in the World, and withal, seeing his Forces were too weak for the puissant Army of their Foes, consulted with the King of Armenia about it, and at last concluded to send Ambassadors into Almaign to Delfurno, who even then newly succeeded his Father in the Empire, being a Prince of great valour which was committed to two Noble-men, the one of Armenia, the other of Macedonia, the contents whereof was to entreat his aid, and withal to proffer him that Lady, whose Picture they had with them, being drawn by an exceeding cunning workman. The Ambassadors departed, and being arrived were to be admitted the Emperors presence; and humbling themselves, one of them delivered the Message in these words:

Renowned Emperor, the Kings of Armenia and Macedonia send friendly greeting to your Highness, desiring your aid against the King of Assyria, & the Emperor of Persia, who are joyned together with oppression and unjust War to offer them injury, the Son of Pericles having

having in a most dishonourable sort deflowered Præsentia, and slain Therus her Brother in her rescue: and our Lords having nothing of more than a most beautiful and vertuous Lady, who exceeds all the Ladies that ever eye beheld, do present her to you, whose counterfeit imperfectly drawn, we here present to your Highness, desiring your assistance to the aid of vertue, and suppressing of wrong, which agrees with your Magnanimity.

Delsurno hearing these speeches, and viewing the picture well for a while stood mute; at last he made them this answer: I know not upon what ground I should War against Assyria, and Persia, that never did me wrong; yet I would willingly assist your Lords, not drawn thereunto by this present, that I esteem not, but the love I bear them, and to punish such dishonour as their Forbearance hath done; therefore return your Lords this answer: That within three months I will be in Armenia, and bring with me such a power as shall vanquish their enemies, and put them in peaceable possession of their Rights. After the Embassadors were honourably entertained, and sumptuously feasted, they departed with this joyful news, which added both comfort and resolution to the Armenian Host.

The Emperor being alone, commanded the picture to be brought into his Chamber, which he viewed and re-viewed, beholding the same with such a surfeiting eye, that he began to affect the absent Lady by having her present picture, and calling before him the ancientest Captains and Commanders that were employed in his Fathers Wars, he commanded them to muster up an Army of forty thousand strong, of the best Souldiers in his Empire, and with all speed to conduct them into Armenia, neither staying his coming, nor expecting other command from him, for he would be there before them. This done, he caused a most costly Armour to be wrought of exceeding strength, wherewith he armed himself, causing his Esquire that attended on him, to cover the picture with a rich Veil. He departed unknown of any, with this intent, by Combat to make all he met confess, that his Ladies beauty surpassed all others, until he came into Armenia, where he determined to challenge all Knights whatsoever in her behalf: where being unknown, and carrying the picture covered he arrived, sending his Esquire

with this message to the General: Noble General, my Master being a Knight of a strange Country, having travelled many miles in search of Adventures, hapning to arrive near the Host, being neither friend nor foe to this Country, desireth that with your favour he may make tryal of his valor against the Knights of this camp, which he will undertake in defence of this Ladies beauty, vertue and worthiness, whom he will maintain against all comers, to exceed all others. The Challenger received this answer: Tell thy Master he is welcome, and shall have our free consent to what he requires; but let him take this friendly warning from me, that he beware what he undertake, least the valor of these Knights turn him to repentance.

The Esquire having this answer, returned to his Master, who presently hung the Picture upon the body of a fair spreading Oak, himself standing thereby as Guardian, and ready to Combate him that came next.

The Knights of Armenia and Macedonia hearing of this strange Knights brave challenge, prepared to Just with him: the first was a young Knight of Armenia named Tellurus, who loved Brissa daughter to the Duke of Linsus, but at the second encounter was overthrowen: the next that Justed was Arnon of Macedonia, who maintained three courtes against him with great agility, but at the fourth he was unhorsed. Others others Justed against him but he won the prize from them all.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

How The Knight of the Oracle leaving his Parents in disguise was entertained by the King of Armenia.

Montelion having heard of the Damosels carrying away from Ralea's house by the enemy, little thinking it had been Philotheta, studied how to redeem her: first he thought to attempt it by force of war, but that course seemed too tedious; then he bethought himself of some speedier means, for that long delay would pinch his heart. When he had long studied, and could yet resolve on nothing, he mounted his horse, and in an Army unknown,

unknown, girding the good sword he loved so well to his side, he rode forth at a Postern Gate so secretly as he could, not as yet resolved what to do, riding toward the Armenian host, but a contrary way as if he had not come from the Assyrian Camp. Being come to the watch: they apprehended him, and he yielded, desiring to be carried to the General; where being come, the General demanded of whence he was, I am (quod he) of Arabia, having travelled many years in strange adventures. What is your name? (said the General) Sir (quod he) my name is Honorius. Will you (said the General) serve me against my foe the Assyrian? I will (said he) if your quarrel be just, serve you faithfully, and spend my life to punish disloyalty. Then the General repeated the history between him and Persicles, shewing the claim he had to the Assyrian Crown, and amongst many other falsehoods accusing Montelion of Praxentia's Rape, and Therus's death. This verily Montelion exceedingly, hoping to work sufficient revenge for all; using such behaviour and speech as was fit at such a time, so that he was well entertained of the General, and granted such priviledges as the rest of the Knights had, being neither known, nor once suspected to be the man he was.

C H A P. XXXIX.

How Delsurno arrived at the Armenian Host.

The next day the Almain Forces arrived in Armenia, and the King assuring himself that Delsurno would not be long behind them; caused Philotheta to be adorned with most costly and rich robes, to be well attended by a gallant train of fair Damsels, which he did to please and delight him with her beauty. Philotheta supposed his intent in doing her so much honor, had been that either he pretended love to her himself, or else did it in the behalf of Palian, which besides the abundant cares that possessed her heart, bred a fresh disquiet in her, resolving not to love any but Montelion. The same day also Delsurno seeing no more would combat with him came to the Court, discovering himself to the Kings of Macedonia and Armenia, yet he desired them to conceal the same, who with great honour and courtlike entertained him,

and the more to please him, conducted him to the Palace, where the two Queens of Macedonia and Armenia were, accompanied by the Princess Praxentia, but all in mourning except Philotheta, who dazzled the beholders eyes. When Delsurno beheld her, at the first view his heart was attracted with loving admiration, and then bowing his heart her way, suddenly becoming so servile a subject to Love, that his heart, hands, eyes, and every member were devoted to her service. After short salutations to all the rest forgetting longer to conceal himself, he came to Philotheta, saluting her with these speeches: Lady blame me not for undertaking to be the Champion of your beauty: I am the man that hath these many days held Combat against all Knights in your behalf not having discovered to any your name fearing to offend you, the original of my attempt being the earnest zeal and love I bear you. Sir, (replied she) your labour was greater than your reward and more than you have needed to have undertaken and a little pleases me; therefore I pray leave off to do so, and then I shall think my self more beholding to you, the subject notwithstanding the expectation.

Delsurno was nipt with this reply, but so much ravished to hear her Heavenly voice, that he was to seek a reply, standing so long in a deep study, that she returned from him, and he started as ashamed of that oversight: and coming to the Kings of Macedonia and Armenia, he said: This Ladys beauty surpasses all that ever I beheld; I pray tell me of whence she is? Her name is Philotheta (quoth they) the Daughter to a Duke in Arabia, whom if it please your Highness to accept of, she I know will yield to any request. I like her well indeed, (quoth Delsurno) and so me that labour I may enjoy her, and I will bind my self your everlasting friend. Many other speeches past betwixt them, both of them promising to effect his desire with speed, especially the King of Armenia, who presently left him, and finding he out he uttered these speeches: Fair Lady, such happiness may befall you at this instant, which if you now refuse and live many thousand years after, you will never light on the like again; for the mightiest Emperor in the world seeks your Love with honourable resolution to make you his Wife, and Crown you with the title of Empress, this Knight that even now offered his

vice to you, is the Emperour of Almaign, named Delsurno; who hearing of your beauty, came purposely into this Country to behold you, and do you service.

Philotheta hearing so old a man become so earnest a solicitor, being neither pleased with his company nor counsel, gave him this answer: Your proffers are as great as liberal, yet neither pleasing nor acceptable to me; for I live here by constraint, not by consent, whereby my mind cannot be at quiet till I am released from hence, desiring to live in another place.

CHAP. XL.

How The Knight of the Oracle knew Philotheta, and how she was by the King of Armenia committed to his charge.

AT this while he stayed below among other Knights in the Hall till Philotheta came to go into the Garden with a gallant train of Damoisels attending on her, Montelion noting her well, suddenly remembering he had seen her, felt such a passion oppress his heart, that it seemed to melt within him: when she was past, he demanded what Lady that was? Her name said one, is Philotheta, daughter to a Duke in Arabia, being lately surprised in Assyria, and brought hither with intent to be married to Delsurno. The Knight of the Oracle hearing this, shrowded himself in a solitary place, where he uttered these Meditations: Can it be, that Philotheta was in Assyria in her own person, and in another's name to bring a message to me? that I need not doubt of, for Ralea's speeches confirmed it: but may it not be, that she sent some other? that cannot be, for Ralea told me she came in the disguise of a Palmer, which Palmer was even the very same that trained me to Praxentia's presence, whom I now remember had the very same countenance of Philotheta, which made me to affect him so much. These remembrances may be assurances that she rather loveth than loveth me, otherwise I cannot be persuaded, and then the task I have undertaken will be over-redundant, for it will be in vain to seek her love that regards me not: besides, did she love me, she having thrust my self amongst such a company of my ene-

mies, that if they knew me would soon end my life; it is impossible for me to make my love known to her, or so much as to speak to her, I see there is no hope for me, but to despair, or return to my Parents and seek to win her by force.

Continuing in these meditations he espied the King of Armenia coming towards him, to whom he used great Reverence. The King suddenly seeing him, soon remembered that he told him he was an Arabian: which made him say thus unto him: Well met Honorius, I think thou toldst me thou wert of Arabia, and therefore it cometh in my mind, that thou art the only man mayest pleasure me, if thou wilt undertake for a matter of small labour but great importance: if thou wilt undertake it, and with secrecy conceal it, thy reward shall be as much as thy heart can wish. My Lord, said he, whatsoever it be I will undertake it, and do my utmost endeavour therein, with such secrecy and diligence as you shall like of. I both trust and believe thee, (said he) for in thy face I see the sparks of honour; therefore thus it is: there is in my Court a Lady of thy Country, named Philotheta, whom I thought to have married to Delfurno, but now my mind is changed, and I purpose to enjoy her my self: and because thou art her Country-man, I think thou mayest prevail with her more than any other, therefore I have chosen thee as my friend, yea, my dear friend, to sollicite my suit to her; but it must not be known but that thou speakest for the Emperour, for so I will tell him: this is that I would have you perform: Tell me, art thou resolved to do it? Where the task (said he) far greater, I would undertake it, but in this I think my self much honoured by your Majesty, hoping to prevail so, that you shall attain your desire. Then come along with me (quoth he) and so bringing him to her Lady's chamber, he uttereth these speeches:

Lady, because you are a stranger, and unacquainted with the Armenian guise I have brought you this Knight, not to be your Guardian, (for I make you no Prisoner) but to bear you company, and defend you if any should offer you wrong, whom I hope you will accept of. Philotheta liked his proffer well, hoping that he would prove a means for her escape, and accepted the same with hearty thanks.

CHAP. XLI.

Of the first Conference between Philotheta and The Knight of the Oracle.

When The Knight of the Oracle had the Lady in custody that he loved so dearly, he thought himself most happy, and doing her humble reverence, she demanded his name? My name, quoth he is Honorius. Then she asked him whose Son he was, for which he had no ready answer; but stood silent, not caring to be taken in a lye. She seeing that, said: I perceive I shall have small comfort of thee, for I see thou art not of my Country.

Lady (said he) what ever I am, I rest only at your command. Then (quoth she) you will not please him that brought you unto me, for my mind and his are quite contrary. Suppose I did, (qd. he) yet having no intent to do it, but thereby to enjoy your presence, you have no cause to suspect me: yet you are deceived in his intent, for none but my self knoweth it, which I will reveal to you, if you will conceal it from him, for I came hither to do you service, and not to further him. Tell it me (said she) and indeed I will conceal it. Thus it is, (replied he) whereas he with great earnestness hath sued in the behalf of the Emperour, he hath now appointed me to be a more earnest Soliciter in his own behalf, for that he is deeply in love with you, but he intendeth that Delphino shall think I am only employed to pleasure him, which he imparting to me, I willingly undertook, not to do it, but to do you all the humble service and duty that lies in a man to do, being neither of this Court, nor of Arabia, but a Knight of Assyria, that vowed never to leave searching till I found you out, the occasion whereof was this:

It chanced one day to be my fortune, that as I was walking in a Grove adjacent unto the Palace Garden, I heard a Knight whom afterwards I well knew, making such lamentation for your absence, that nothing but news of your safety could ease his heart: whereupon I disclosed my self unto him, and for the love I bare him, vowed to travel in your search: first arriving in

this Court, where to my exceeding joy I have found you, with all humility proffering you my service, being ready to undertake any peril to do you service.

I know not how to trust thee (said she) considering that thou regardest not to break thy word with the King of Armenia, therefore I fear thou wilt do the like to me; yet if fair words deceive me, I shall be deceived in time: I would trust thee but I dare not, and blame me not; for having found untruth in many, I know not how to trust thee: my fortune was ever yet adverse, and therefore I am without hope of better, then leave me for this time, and if you can find in your heart to be true to help me, I may hereafter be better advised to employ you. These words being ended, they departed.

C H A P. XLII.

Of the sorrow that was made in the Assyrian Camp for The Knight of the Oracle's absence.

LET us now return to speak of Persicles who missing his Son went to seek him at his Chamber, and from thence from place to place, till at last he heard news by a servant, there was a Knight departed that day at the Postern gate, armed at every point. Persicles hearing that, returned to the Emperor and notified him and Constantia of his departure, both of them being stricken with exceeding grief. News was likewise brought, the Emperor of Alpagne was arrived with forty thousand Soldiers, to aid the Kings of Macedonia and Armenia.

The Emperor of Persia and Persicles hearing this, assembled all the Nobility together to determine what to do: at last they all concluded with a general consent, within two days to bid them Battle; but the Soldiers hearing of The Knight of the Oracle's absence, seemed like men that had lost their former courage.

C H A P. XLIII.

Of the secret practices of the Kings of Macedonia and Armenia to deceive each other of Philotheta's love, which they revealed to Honorius, Knight of the Oracle.

Montelion being also no less sad to have left his Parents so carelessly, than they were for his absence, spending the night in solitary meditations, he arose early on purpose to reveal himself and his love to Philotheta, whatsoever ensued thereon, yet fearing to disquiet her, he walked down the Garden, where he had not stayed long, but he was surprised by Delsurno, who came purposely to know if he had mentioned his suit to Philotheta, who answered him, that he had much conference with her last night about it, and that she had deferred him for that days answer. Thereupon he promised him a greater reward for his fidelity, and so departed.

He was no sooner gone, but the King of Macedon came to him whose heart was grounded upon a new subject, which Montelion thought not of, for he determined that none should enjoy Philotheta, but himself, and therefore came to make tryal whether his supposed Honorius would condescend to be ruled by him, which if he would do, he should secretly convey Philotheta into Macedonia: to this effect he communed with Honorius, first binding him to be secret, and then by gifts enticing him; and lastly, using intreaty till he had uttered the depth of his mind, which he promising to effect, used such words as pleased the King, wherewith he went away.

Whilst Montelion and the King of Macedonia were thus in conference, the King of Armenia entered the Garden, but seeing them in discourse together, withdrew himself till he departed, and then came in, demanding what good news he had for him.

My Lord (quoth he) the last motion you made to her about her marriage to Delsurno hath hindered your own, for I had much ado to persuade her, that you had any intent to love her, that were so earnest for another: yet nevertheless I hope soon to alter her, and bring her to a better liking of your affection. The Emperor

hath been with me already, earnestly soliciting me to prosecute his suit with efficacy. Likewise the King of Macedonia hath with many promises desired me to use what persuasions I could in the Emperors behalf: But being so honourably esteemed of by your Majesty, I will try the uttermost of my skill to pleasure you. I thank thee (good Honorius, quoth he) and I will for thy kindness, yield thee as large a recompence, as thine heart can wish; which said, he departed.

What an office have I have undertaken (said Montelion) to sue for others and dare not speak for my self? and yet contrary to my liking am forced to it, only to rid my self from grief. Yet because time affordeth me not an opportunity to work my own ends, I'll try whether she will pity me or not.

CHAP. XLIV.

How The Knight of the Oracle discovered himself to Philotheta, and how by a stratagem he conveyed her thence in safety, and what rejoicing there was thereupon.

NOW The Knight of the Oracle having parted from the King of Armenia, went to Philotheta's Lodging, whom he found very sad, but espying him come towards her, turned from him, refusing to hear him speak, (supposing his speeches would have tended to persuade her to what he had the day before mentioned:) he seeing her unwillingness to hear him, imagined the cause, but yet emboldening himself he said: *Vertueus Lady, pardon my boldness, and withal touchsafe to hear me, who shall not offend you; for I have vowed not to utter a syllable contrary to your liking.*

You will then (quoth she) prove persured, I know your message well enough before you utter it, and that it will displease me. So dear Lady (said he) I come not now to ask pity for another, but for my self. that sometimes have been better known of you: I am the most unfortunate Montelion, that hath adventured thus far amongst my foes, to seek you out, my heart having honoured you ever since the first sight of you in the Hermit's Cell in Arabia, and now I desire you to pity me, for without your labour I am not my self, and in your labor, I shall account my self most fortunate.

fortunate. Philotheta noting him well, perfectly remembered that it was he, which revived her heart with great joy, saying: Noble Knight I account my self most happy, in that you have me in your custody, for your vertuous mind I know will shelter me from dishonour: Should I not yield you thanks for deeming so well of me that am not worthy you might condemn me of rudeness, therefore I most humbly thank you, and wishal desire you to pity my estate, that is now racked upon the wheel of despair. Dear Lady, (said he) I am willing to do you any service, desiring nothing more than to employ my self to your good, for my life is yours, and all that I have shall lie prostrate at your feet, desiring to convey you hence into Assyria, where your Parents live in safety, but sorrowful for your absence.

Sir, (replied she) your vertuous kindness hath deserved more at my hands than I can yield thanks for, then how shall I behave my self to do the thing you desire, which is already fixed in my heart? I will rest so far to be directed by you as that my mind shall be agreeable to any request you shall make. Then dear Lady, (said he) I will before to morrow this time see you safe in my father's Court, for much mischief is intended by the Kings of Macedonia and Armenia, both of them have been with me this day and hired me to motion their loves to you, both of them seeking to enjoy you, but so as the other should not know thereof, each striving to prevent the other, and both of them the Emperor; which they have revealed unto me; but may I have your licence, I will deliver you from their custody. I most humbly desire you to do it (quoth she) referring my self to your good directions, and committing all to your wisdoms election: this said, The Knight of the Oracle intolding himself, gave and received so sweet a kiss, which seemed to interchange each others Souls: he leaving her, to find out the King of Armenia, and she into her private Chamber.

Montelion having found out the King of Armenia told him how that the King of Macedon went to convey Philotheta from thence, relating all the conference that had passed between them: Nay, said he, the Emperor was with me this day, promising me great rewards if I would do the like for him. Now my Lord, my love and duty to you bindeeth me only to do you, service, and therefore I have

have bow'd that my best endeavors shall be employed only unto your good liking.

The King hearing how they went both about to deceive him, rag'd exceedingly, but trusting to his fidelity he was quieted, asking him what he would do to prevent them both. My Lord (quoth he) this evening you may effect your desire or never; at which time give me but directions whither I may convey her to a place of security, or where we may meet you, and I will adventure my life but I will do it; but you must deliver your Signet unto me, for our quiet passage out of the City Gate: and then I will meet you where you will appoint us. That shall be (said the King) at Fryer Bernard's Cell without the City, if you know it, and there is my Signet. Thither will I convey her (quoth he) at twelve o'clock. Farewel reply'd the King, be faithful, and thou shalt find my friendship such, as shall highly reward thy pains.

Montelion having effected this, presently went to the King of Macedonia, telling him that the Emperor's importunity was such, that it was high time to convey Philotheta from thence, whom he found willing to yield thereto: He hearing that, desired his counsel promising to reward him well, telling him that if he would do it for him, both he and his Kingdom should be at his command. Then (quoth Montelion) deliver me your Signet for my Pass and appoint the time and place, and I will bring her thither, There is my Signet (quoth he) and bring her to Fryer Bernard's Cell at one of the Clock.

Montelion then with all speed went to the Emperor, telling him that Philotheta did greatly affect him, and had sent him to make an humble request unto him, which was, that she might be conveyed in secrecy from the Armenian Camp, for that many dangers did inhison her in that place, and that of such importance as did concern his life, whereon her safety depended, which because they were of weight, she would reveal to none but himself, desiring him not to come to her, for it would endanger his person.

Delfurno hearing this, was much troubled in his mind, yet being very glad to hear that she so much esteemed him, said: Honorius I would as willingly effect any thing to content her as I would to save my own life, yet I do not know how, unless by

thy direction, therefore do but counsel me, and I will yield to that which thou shalt advise me. My Lord (said he) the safest way is, this night to convey her secretly through the Gate where your Souldiers lye, and I will bring her to Fryer Bernard's Cell about eleven a clock, where you may be ready to receive her, and with a strong guard convey her into Almain, or any place of security: moreover, my Lord, he willed me to assure you, that both the Kings of Armenia and Macedonia, having disloyally forgotten their promise to you, seek to win her love to themselves, which dishonour he cannot endure. Delfurno was much grieved to hear that, yet hoping to prevent them both quieted himself, delivering his Signet unto him, with many thanks and much entreaty, desiring him to be careful; and that nothing might prevent his purpose.

Montelion being glad of this, thought not to end yet, but presently went to the Queen of Macedonia, telling her the King's plot, to convey Philotheta from thence, shewing her his Signet, which when she beheld, exceeding grief possesed her heart, to think of his disloyalty. But seeing her sorrows, he said: Although he hath attempted this, I know the Ladies vertues to be such as she will sooner suffer the extreamest miseries in the World, than yield thereto; and for my self, though he hath promised me great rewards, I respect more my honour, than to be agent in so wicked an act: therefore to assure you that I intend it not, I yield you his Signet, whereby I should have passed the camp, to meet at Bernard's Cell. I thank the gentle Knight (quoth she) and for this need command any thing, and thou shalt have it; my self will meet him there, and by that means I hope to make him give over his attempt.

The Knight of the Oracle being gone from her; went to the Armenian Queen, telling her the like, and indeed the truth of her Lord, both giving her his Signet and Directions how she should meet him, leaving her so mad with rage and jealousy, that she was ready to tear her hair, yea, even with bitter exclaims to repeal her mind, but that she referred it untill she might surprisell him with a guilty Conscience at the Cell.

By this time it grew to be night; and after Supper was ended, Delfurno the King of Armenia, and the King of Macedonia, making
more

more than wouled haste to break company, each being glad that the other was so willing to part, which the two Queens now, being privy to their desires.

Then Montelion went to Philotheta, telling her that he had so prevailed with the Emperour, that he had gotten his Signet as their warrant to pass through the Camp, desiring her to be in a readines to go with him, intreating her to fear no danger, for his life should shield her: whereupon she desired him to stay with her till the time appointed, which he did, passing away the same in private conference.

The time being come and all things silent Montelion Armed himself, leading Philotheta, out of the Court, passing all the Guards, Watches and Garisons, by shewing the Emperours Signet and coming where the Souldiers lay, they likewise let him go: he having without danger effected this, turned his steps towards his own City, where being come to the gates, the Watch demanded who they were: and he had them come down and see: but upon examination discovering himself, he commanded them to carry him as Prisoner to Belarius, where being come he unveiled Philotheta, and Akala presently knew her, and with tears of joy embraced her, whilst the old Duke melted with passion to behold his Child, whom from her infancy he had not seen, embracing her in his arms.

These joyful expressions being over-past, The Knight of the Oracle said: Lady, since you are now in safety with your Parents, my promise is performed, desiring you to have regard to the persons I endure, which time will not now permit me to utter, but I leave it to your courteous consideration, therefore I beseech you in my absence let my Loyalty be regarded, and your gentle heart willing to pity me: which said, with a second kiss, he left her, to submit himself to his Parents.

C H A P. XLV.

Of the discord that fell between the Emperor of Almaign, the King of Macedonia, and the King of Armenia about Philotheta's departure: of a merry jest that befel the two Queen's and the desolation of the Armenian Host.

Delsurno the Emperor chusing to him some trusty Knights that he meant should convey Philotheta into Almaign, secretly went to the Fryer's Cell, where he secretly shrowded himself under a Tuft of a Cypress tree, staying the coming of Philotheta, but it was an hour before any came, and the first was the Queen of Macedonia, who attended by one of her Gentlemen, came towards Bernard's Cell; which he beholding slept to her, saying:

My dear Philotheta, I am sorry that for my sake you should take such pains at this unreasonable hour to be abroad, for which I yield you all the thanks a constant heart can wish. She hearing that, thinking it had been her Lord, returned him the same; and purposing to try the utmost before she revealed her self, said: had I not been assured of your love, I would not have come hither but being here I rest at your disposition.

Delsurno then embraced her oftentimes kissing her hand; and being of a quick conceit, presently beroughgt himself if she would condescend, to call up the Fryer and be married. Lady, (said he) since you have vouchsafed to grant me love, yield me possession, and let us be married.

My Lord (replied she) I am content. Then Delsurno called up Fryer Bernard, who arising, the Emperor took him aside, and told him what he was; who hearing that presently joyned their hands. Delsurno then purposed not so convey her thence, but returned to the Camp: as soon as he was gone, the King of Macedonia came to the Cell, and presently after, the Queen of Armenia according to Montelion's directions.

The King taking her for Philotheta, at the first meeting embraced her with a sweet Congee; uttering many loving speeches,

A a

which

which she answered as kindly, and he desired present possession of her love; but she denyed, telling him that his Quern would soon take her death when she knew it.

Fear not that (quoth he) for e're long I mean to make her sure enough for ever troubling you; therefore deny me not, but grant me the love.

I will not (said she) without some further assurance, for my mind presageth some ill. Here is a Fryer (quoth he) not far off, will you condescend that he shall marry us? she agreeing, he called up the Fryer the second time, who martelling thereat, demanded the cause of his coming. My friend (quoth he) I would be married to this Lady, therefore I pray thee do it with all speed.

The Fryer thinking that some mad spirits were abroad, or that some frantick dream had overcome his senses, without asking any more questions, married them and sent them away. The Kings of Macedon carried her to his Tent in the field, for he durst not go to the Palace for fear of his Wife, where he stayed with her all night.

Now the King of Armenia all this while was studying what eloquent speeches he should use to set forth his love, resting himself upon a bank hard by the Cell, staying their coming an hour: but when these hours were come and past, he began to be impatient, fearing he should be disappointed: but when he saw they came not, he thought with himself that he had mistaken the time, and being much troubled in mind, knocked at the Fryer's Cell, who started from his bed as one affrighted, wondering what accident had withen so many thither that night; and coming to the door, the King of Armenia demanded if there had not been a Lady there that night.

Yes (qd. he) here have been two, but what they were I know not: I think one couple was Philotheta and Delsurno; that I married; but what the other two were I know not. He hearing that, in a mad rage went to the King of Macedon's Tent, desiring to speak with him; the Guard knowing him, let him in; and he coming to the bed-side, said:

Brother of Macedon, the Lady that we intended to marry to Delsurno, is this night fled, so that we shall lose his friendship for

forever. The King of Macedonia hearing him lay like one bereft of sense, not knowing what to say, and the Queen hearing her husband there, whom she thought lay by her, trembled with fear.

The King of Macedonia seeing no remedy, but that his deed of necessity must be discovered, said: King of Armenia, it is so: I have Philotheta in my custody, and her I will enjoy, for she lies folded in mine arms.

By Jupiter (quoth the King of Armenia) thy life shall not sacrifice the dishonour thou hast done us: with that he drew his sword, and the King of Macedon leaped out of the bed to reach his to defend himself, in which time the King of Armenia catching hold on her as she lay drew her forth upon the floor and beholding her well, he was so much enraged that he was ready to kill her: but the King of Macedon prevented him, whom when he beheld, he stood like one metamorphosed, whilst she halted to apparel herself, and ran from thence unto the Palace. The King of Armenia bowing revenge, went from the Macedonian Tent, and caused his Drums to beat up Alarms, commanding his soldiers to destroy the Macedonians, who according to order suddenly set upon them, so that there began a great slaughter among them.

The Emperor hearing this news, supposing the cause had been for the loss of Philotheta, commanded two of his Knights to go unto either of them, and desire them to be pacified until they had discovered their griefs to him, which he could easily remedy. The Messengers went, and found them both together in single combat delibering their Hellage unto them; but it was long before any of them would go to him: yet at last they both went together: to whom the Emperor said: My Lords, I believe your strife ariseth from the loss of Philotheta, if that be the cause, contend no more: for as you were both willing I should enjoy her, so I have done this night.

The King of Armenia being enraged with Jealousie, drew the Curtains; and the Queen of Macedonia seeing her honour so betrayed was quite bereft of her senses: but coming to her self again, she cried out for pardon; but they were all enraged, that no time of parley was admitted, and as well Delfurno as the

rest betook himself to Arms. But the Queen humbling her self at her husband's feet, said : Both you, my self, and all of us, are deceased : Honorius told me last night, that you intended to marry Philotheta, and I requested his counsel how to prevent you, whereupon he told me that you had appointed to meet him and her at Bernard's Cell ; and for his pals he had received your Signet, which at my intreaty he delivered unto me : I thinking to prevent you, went thither, whither the Emperour met me, whom I took to be your self, and he took me to be the Lady Philotheta, I still concealing my self, thinking I had not offended, but now I see I am betrayed. Lady (said he) this fault I pardon, having committed the same with the Queen of Armenia.

The Emperour hearing this, sent a Messenger to know if Philotheta was in the Court, but he brought news that neither she nor the strange Knight were to be found. The Emperour then said : that Knight hath deceived us all, therefore let us be friends. Content (quoth the King of Macedonia) By Heaven (said the King of Armenia) I will not bear this dishonour, but be revenged at full, and make thee repent that ever thou offeredst such dishonour to Armenia. The King of Macedonia could not brook his words, but in a rage made this reply : I know thou art a Tyrant, and regardest no Laws humane or Divine, as may be seen by thy unjust Title thou layest to the Assyrian Crown, which is forged ; and were it not to revenge my Daughter's shame, and Son's death, I would not draw a Sword against that worthy King Persicles, therefore since thou art so peremptory, do thy worst, I regard thee not.

The King of Armenia went from thence, and fell upon the Macedonians ; the King of Macedon presently left his Tent to defend himself, and the Emperour with all speed commanded his Souldiers to march out of the City.

CHAP. XLVI.

How Persicles and The Knight of the Oracle suddenly issuing out, destroyed the Armenian Host.

Montelion knowing that some stratagem would follow his last night's policy, after he had submitted himself to the Emperor and his Parents, he armed himself in the Armor that was given him by the Pymphs, and mounting himself conducted a thousand Souldiers into the City. Persicles hearing of this sent for him to know the cause. This night (qd he) we shall surprize our enemies, who are now together by the ears amongst themselves. Whereupon Persicles armed himself, Deloratus, Pisor, Cothanes, and many other Knights of great esteem, marching thither, where they heard such cruel alarms, that they thought the City had been utterly destroyed: being come thither, they beheld the Emperor in the field, to whom Persicles sent a Herald, certifying, that he was never foe to the Almagins, desiring therefore to know if Delsurno came against him: but he returned answer that he was no foe to him.

Montelion being entered the City, set upon his enemies with such fury, that many of them lost their lives, and seeing the Kings of Armenia and Macedonia together in single combat, he stept between them, saying: Strike not to destroy one another, but defend your selves.

They knowing him, were so amazed, as if they had been in a sudden trance, running several ways to call back their Soldiers from destroying one another, to defend themselves, but before they could array themselves in order, the Assyrians were so intermingled amongst them, that they were soon vanquished. Palian seeing this, perceived it was in vain to strike for victory, and stole secretly forth of the City to the Emperor, entreating him not to leave them, but Delsurno seeing that disadvantage had seized them, refused, letting him return without comfort, ready to yield to Montelion's sword, at whom he ran with such fury, that he wounded him on the thigh. Montelion feeling that, struck so forcible a blow at Palian, that he astonished him, and withal over-

took the King at the first blow cutting asunder his wrist which had lost his Garter, and at the next, thrust his Sword quite thro'ow his body.

Palian having recovered himself, and looking about him, beheld his Fathers Tragedy, aiming his Swords point at Montelion's heart; which he perceiving welcomed him with so cruel a blow, that his Armour flew in pieces; and Palian's would have done the like, had not his Armour been of invincible strength: but in the end he flew from him to save his life, finding himself too weak and feeble.

Persicles and Deloratus all this while ranged up and down, destroying all they met, untill they met the King of Macedonia and his two sons accompanied with four other Knights of the same Country, who had made much slaughter amongst their Soldiers.

Persicles ran his Lance full couched at the King of Macedon, and overthrew him: but his eldest Son stepping to his rescue, did wound him in the thigh: then began an unequal fight, these six set upon Persicles and Deloratus, who continued combat with them the space of an hour, till both sides were grievously wounded; especially they two, who were ready to faint with effusion of blood.

Montelion seeing his Father and Deloratus in such danger, was so enraged, that he ran at one of them with such force, that he flew him, and the next he bereft of sense, and charging another with such puissant blows, that he forced him to bid Vale to the Field: another seeing that, encountered him, but at the first charge received so fatal a blow, that he was not able to resist him. Persicles being sore wounded, yet behaved himself so valiantly, that one of them lay dead at his feet, and the rest fled from Montelion, Then began a delolation in the Host, the Armenians crying out. *Flie, flie*; and their enemies, *Kill, kill*: that on a sudden the Battle was so hot, that the City-channels ran with blood, and none could pass for dead bodies. Then began the Citizens to run on heaps, and the two Queens with Praxent a betwix themselves to flight, but were all taken by Pisor.

Palian was taken Prisoner by Deloratus and the King of Macedonia and his two Sons by Persicles and Montelion. The Soldiers

hers that were fled out of the City, and hid themselves in the fields, and so many Citizens as could escape the Sword, entered on Persicles on their knees to save their lives: who yielded upon this condition, that they should pay to every common Souldier a hundred Crowns, and to every Leader five hundred, which they performed.

Persicles then sounded a Retreat and drew his Forces out of the City, appointing Garrisons for them. Delfurno at his return met him, and so they rode together to the City of Pisos, where they were received with great Honour and Joy; especially The Knight of the Oracle, to whom all men attributed the Glory of that History.

After the dead bodies were buried, and maimed Souldiers sent to Hospitals to be cured, and every one well gratified, within two days the Emperors of Almaign and Persia, Persicles, Deloratus, Montelion, and all the Nobles there, except prisoners, assembled to finish the conclusion of this controvercie, for that the King of Macedonia halted his releasement. Being all set in a most Royal and Majestical sort, the places near to the Royal Assembly being gloriously furnished with the beauties of shining Ladies, the Prisoners were brought before them in honorable sort; and after many allegations of wrongs, they desired Montelion to appoint their Ransoms: whereupon with great wisdom and decent behaviour he yielded them thanks, as was seldom seen in any Knight so young; first with great courtesie embracing the King of Macedon, reconciling him to his Queen, and the rest who had taken offence by him, setting all free but Palian and Praxentia, imposing this task upon them, Palian to marry Praxentia, and she to quit him of the wrongful accusation she laid upon him which she presently did, but refused to marry Palian.

The two Emperors and Persicles desiring them to honour The Knight of the Oracle, stood up, requesting him to require any thing of them he desired; for above all men they esteemed him, as he had best deserved. Montelion desiring nothing more than Philotheta's love, stepped to the seat where she sat like a Goddess, and taking her by the hand, he said:

Fair Lady, will you condescend to what I demand, and I will obtain, Sir (said she) I yield above all the rest to honour you,

shall obtain. Sic (said she) I yield above all the rest to honour you, as one most unworthy, yet having received most. Then he leading her down with greater Royalty than ever Paris did Helen, desired to be married to her; which was applauded with so general a consent, that all persons rejoiced, some commending, some embracing, and every one desirous to shew their Love to him so that the day of marriage was appointed, and likewise performed with more Royalty, Joy and Pleasure than can be expell'd.

An Advertisement of Books.

Sold by William Thackeray at the Angel in Duck-Lane, and Thomas Passenger at the Three Bibles on London-Bridge.

THE Dutch Fortune-teller, in Folio.

The famous History of *Parisinus* and *Parismenos*, in 4.

The History of *Ornatus* and *Artesia*, in 4.

The History of *Tom-a-Lincoln*, or the Red-Rose-Knight, in 4.

The pleasant History of *Dorastus* and *Fawnia*, in 4.

Hocus Pocus, or the art of *Leger-de-main*, in 4.

The Speedy Post, or a Packet of Letters, in 4.

The Seven Wise Masters of Rome, in 8.

The Seven Wise Mistresses of Rome, in 8.

Robin Hood's Garland, in 8.

Wit and Mirth by J. Tayler, in 8.

The Garland of Good-Will, in 8.

The Garland of Loyalty, in 8.

The School of Vertue, in 8.

The Book of Knowledge, in 8.

The Gentle Craft, in 4.

The Crown Garland, in 8.

The History of *Scoggin*, in 4.

The History of *Thomas of Reading*, in 4.

The History of *Valentine* and *Orson*, in 4.

With Variety of other Histories, useful either for England or Ireland.

F I N I S.



LIBERTY



WISDOM